VALENTINE AND ORSON,

The Two SONS of the

Emperour of Greece.

Newly *Corrected* and *Amended*; with New Pictures, lively *Expreſſing the* Hiſtory.

Printed by *A. M.* for *E. Tracy*, at the *Three Bibles*, on *London-Bridge*.

The PRINTER to the READER.

AMongſt many Hiſtories, as well Ancient as Modern, which have in former Times borrowed our *Engliſh* Phraiſe to ſpeak withal, this (gentle Reader) *here* of *Valentine* and *Orſon*, Sons to the Emperor of *Greece*, now once again Imprinted, crave a *free* Paſſage of thy Acceptance, and puts it ſelf to the Cenſure of thoſe Hiſtoriographers, which make *Invention* the Eldeſt Daughter of the *Seven Sciences*. *Therefore*, conſidering with my ſelf the Worthineſs of the Story, with the Variety *thereof*, being many Years ago firſt Written in *French*, and ſince Tranſlated into *Engliſh*; *where* it hath found a favourable Welcome, as well of Superiours as Inferiours; *I* have now again, to my *Coſt* and *Charge*, Publiſhed it to the Eye and Ear of Such, to *be ſeen or heard*, as take pleaſure in *theſe* kind of Writings. *It* is furniſhed with much State of Matter, Elegancy and *Invention*, and deck'd forth with many fair Models and lively Pictures, all pertinent and *agreeable* to the *Subject* of the *Hiſtory*, which I have cauſed to be newly Cut; not only to make it carry the more grace in Reading, but a *more luſtre* to *Heroick Atchievements* of Knightly Adventures: For here may the Princely Mind *ſee* his own Model; the Knightly Tilter his Martial Atchievement; and the Amorous Lady her *Dulcet Paſſages of Love*. *Here are Countries*, with the Courts of Kings deciphered; the Magnitude of Honours laid open; and the true Form of Turnaments deſcribed; and *between* Knight and Knight are *here* moſt lively Combats portrayed, to the great Content of the *Reader*. Let no Man *therefore* think his Time ill ſpent, or his Labour loſt, where the Matter affords ſuch Copiouſneſs of Pleaſure. The Hiſtory for the Strangeneſs, may well bear the Title of *Courtly Contents*, for *indeed* it is a Garden of Courtly Delights, wherein grow Flowers of an extraordinary Savour, that gives a Scent in the Boſoms of Nobility, Ladies, *Knights*, and Gentlewomen: It gives alſo a Working to the Minds of the dull Country-ſwains; and (as it were) leads them to ſearch out for Martial Atchievements, befitting

fitting many Paſtimes. Herein is alſo contained the true Difference betwixt Art and Nature; for in *Valentine* is comprehended the Education of Art; and in *Orſon* the true Working of Nature; for being both one Emperor's Sons, the one brought up in a Prince's Palace, the other among Savage Beaſts; now makes the Current paſs with more Admiration to the Reader: Mark but the Carriage of the Wild *Orſon*, and you ſhall find that Nature hath a being above Art, but yet Nature bettered by Art, hath a more noble Working. The Hiſtory here Written was Tranſlated out of *French* into *Engliſh*, above a Hundred Years ago, by one *Henry Watſon*, and ſince that time, it hath been by him Corrected, and put into a more pliant Style, and ſo followed on to the Preſs, till this preſent Edition, which I have (as you *ſee*) here Publiſhed for thy Benefit: *therefore*, *Gentle Reader*, accept of this my Coſt and Pains, who had rather prove a Loſer, than ſo Worthy a Story as this is, ſhould lie in Obſcurity; for there are few Subjects of Humane Carriage, but are herein handled, *therefore the* more fitting to *be ſeen* into. If you deſire to *ſee* the Care and Troubles of Kings, *here* they are; if you deſire to know the Battels of Martial Champions, *here* they are; if of Courtly Tournaments and Combats of princes, *here* they are; if of the Travels of Knightly Adventures, *here* they are; if of the Sorrows of Diſtreſſed Ladys, here they are; if of ſtrange Births, and ſavage Educations, *here* they are; if of Friends long loſt, and their joyful *meeting* again, *here* they are; if of Charms and Enchantments, *here* they are; if of the Reward of Traytors and Treaſons, *here* they are; if of long Captivities and Impriſonments, *here* they are: Yea, *here* are all the *Varieties* and Paſſages that may furniſh forth a Hiſtory fit for a *Reader's Pleaſure*; *for no unſeemly Words or Speeches are herein contained*, but ſuch as are modeſtly carried. Conſidering all which, I am now Encouraged to put this old Story into a new Livery, and not ſuffer that to lie Buried, that a little Coſt may *keep* alive. And ſo, *Gentle Reader*, craving thy kind Acceptance, I wiſh *thee* as much Willingneſs to the Reading, as I have *been* forward in the Printing; and ſo I End.

The

The HISTORY *of* Valentine *and* Orſon.

Chap. I. *How King* Pepin *baniſhed his Queen* Bertha; *and how he gave his Siſter* Belliſant *in Marriage to* Alexander, *Emperour of* Conſtantinople.

WE find it ſet down in antient Chronicles, that the thrice noble and valiant *Pepin*, ſome time King of *France*, took to Wife *Bertha*, who was deſcended of no leſs than Royal Race; this Lady was exceeding fair and wiſe, but wonderouſly cumbered with many adverſities and troubles, enviouſly beſet on every ſide; which with great patience ſhe ſuffered. The chief Inſtrument of all this miſchief towards this good Queen, was plotted and effected by a falſe and curſed old Woman, who firſt of all brought her in diſgrace with the King, her Husband, and after to be quite baniſhed his Bed, while ſhe in a cunning manner, brought in a Daughter

Daughter of her own in the good Queens ſtead: This Old woman having thus brought her treachery to effect, (for her Daughter ſomewhat reſembled *Bertha*) it ſo came to paſs, that King *Pepin* had two Sons by this Maiden, to wit, *Haufray* and *Henry*, both which Sons ſo grieved the King, and waiſted the Country of *France*, by their outrages & fury, that in the end they cauſed the Queen *Bertha* to be utterly baniſhed, where ſhe paſſed a great part of her days in doleful lamentation, and abundance of ſorrow: She long endured thoſe miſerable days of ſorrow, at the laſt began to receive comfort again; for it ſo chanced after at the earneſt requeſt of divers great Peers and Lords of *France*, this good Queen began to find favour with the King her Husband, (who when he knew the treachery that wicked old Woman had plotted againſt her) much bewailed the miſeries ſhe had endured, and with great honour & triumph received her again moſt kindly. The Queen being thus reſtored to her former bed, in ſhort time conceived, and bare unto the King a goodly Son, called *Charlemain* the *Puiſſant*; but the King himſelf was continually hunted from place to place, by the aforeſaid *Haufray* and *Henry*, and at laſt compelled by them to forſake his Realm, as hereafter followeth more at large in the enſuing Hiſtory. My purpoſe, at this preſent, is, to ſet down unto the Reader, the whole matter contained in this Book; and eſpecially, the valiant acts and deeds of *Valentine*, and his Brother *Orſon*: This King *Pepin* had a Siſter named *Belliſant*, a Woman of great wit, beauty, and all the endowments that Nature might afford, which cauſed her Brother's love mightily to appear to all the World, in the ardent love and affection that he bare her: It chanced ſo, that the fame of this lovely Perſonage ſpread it ſelf abroad in other Regions, that at laſt *Alexander*, Emperour of *Conſtantinople*, who was much enflamed with her beauty, came into *France*, accompanied with a gallant Troop of his Nobility, all richly ſet out with all manner of pomp belonging to ſo great a Perſonage. This Emperor, ſhortly after his arrival, ſuddenly aſſembled all his Lords in their rich habiliments, appointing them to take their way towards King *Pepin*'s Court; which when underſtood, he joyfully entertained them, and quickly granted the Emperour's requeſt. King *Pepin* underſtanding this ſudden, but joyful news, made great preparations in his Court for entertaining of this noble Emperour: All things being in readineſs King *Pepin*, with all his noble Train, went to meet *Alexander* Emperour of *Conſtantinople*; whom, when they met, they entertain'd with great joy and conducted him to the Court of *France*, where fair *Belliſant* was, and ſhe entertained him with no leſs joy then her Brother had done before; and there they ſpent their time in joy and triumph.

This marriage being once publickly known among all the Inhabitants

joy began to shew forth it self on every side, for such a happy day, wherein such good Alliance was knit between the *Emperor Alexander*, and King *Pepin*; that triumphs began in every place, against the Nuptial-days appearance: When the time appointed came, these two were espoused in all Honour fitting for their Estates, and largeness shewed it self on every side. This *Marriage* feast endured long; but at last, being ended, the *Emperor* (assisted with all his worthy train) made preparation to take their leave of his new *Brother-in-law*, and take their way towards *Constantinople*, with his fair Empress *Bellisant*: Being thus all mounted on horse back, King *Pepin* also set forward with his *Brother*, to bring him on his way, Royally attended on every side, with Lords, Ladies, and many other Gallants of the Court; and they that could not find legs to go, found eyes to weep for the departure of their fair Lady and Mistress, the new Empress, These mighty Princes came near unto a Port of the Sea, whereat they must needs part; there taking leave of each other, they were forced to render more thanks in tears than words, the which I am not able to express: But above all the *Emperor* yielded King *Pepin* worthy thanks for his quick, sudden, and generous consent, in giving to him his fair Sister *Bellisant*, and with so frank and free a Heart to yield him good will. At which words of the *Emperor* unto King *Pepin*, the King presently embraced him in his Arms; saying, *Fair Sir, and my Right loving Lord and Brother*, I have not Received you according as your state Required, nor with such triumphs and magnificence as became me, but in that you have so graciously accepted my small power, *I* hold my self content in that I have done, but not that *I* should have done; and therefore, there belongeth small thanks to me; but from me innumerable, in that you have been pleased to accept of my Sister for your Wife; whereby (*I trust*) long Friendship shall be continued betwixt us: in token whereof, I take witness of all that are here present, that my body, my Realm, my goods, and all the Powers that *I* can Raise in *France*, to adventure for your safety and succour all the days of my life. King *Pepin* being now departed from the *Emperor*, turned himself to his Sister, and in this manner takes his leave: *Fair Sister* (quoth he) think no longer of this Country of *France*, wherein you have spent your *Infant-days*, but Remember that you are removed to a Country of better conditions: Also let your behaviour be such, that *I*, the rest of your Friends, and the whole Company of all the Peers may have honour and joy in you. Again, as the Country where you now do go is strange unto you, so be you governed by the modest Ladies of the Land, and give no ear to wicked Counsel, or to such as would move you to disloyalty: For you are the *Creature* that *I*

have always dearest loved in all the World; wherefore, if I should hear tydings other then good from you, or of you, it would be the only cause to take away my life. After this, he gave unto his Sister many worthy gifts, and so embracing and kissing her, with weeping eyes, he left her to the mercy of the Waves. The young Lady, whose heart being overcharged betwixt joy and fear, was not able to answer a word; and what with tears and sighs, the passage of her tongue was utterly stopt. Then all the Lords and Ladies took their Leave of each other, at which was let fall many a brinnish tear, as well on their parts of *France*, as they also that were to go for *Constantinople*; but especially for the departure of the fair Lady *Bellisant*. All duties of Love being ended, King *Pepin* returned into *France*, and the Emperour by this time, mounted upon the Seas, had wind and water at such will & pleasure, that within short space, he with all his Train, arrived with safety at *Constantinople*; where, at their landing, they were all received with great joy, honour and triumph; all which were needless to recount. But mark what hapned, not long after these joys and triumphs were clean extinguished, that were made for the Lady *Bellisant*, in place whereof, nothing but mournings, lamentations, and tears were placed, and all for the poor Lady, which by treason and false accusations, was cast out and banished, as hereafter more at large you shall perceive.

Chap. II. *How the Arch priest of* Constantinople *betrayed the Emperour, his Lord and Master, in making love to fair* Bellisant, *the Empress; and what evil followed thereupon. The Arch-priest having received a Repulse of* Bellisant, *to save his own Honour, practised treason against the Innocent Lady.*

IN *Constantinople* lived an Arch-priest, in whom the Emperour put such trust, & loved so fervently, that he bestowed upon him great riches & possessions, and committed all his bosom-thoughts unto his secrecy: And in the end made him sole Governour and Commander over all his house; as also he was the Emperor's principal Confessor, and one of his greatest Favourites, for which he afterwards had many a sorrowful heart. The Bishop forgetting all the Emperor's favours, and great honours done unto him, being intangled and overcome with the beauty of the new Empress, which excelled all mortal Creatures, inordinate lust prevailed with him so far, that there was nothing stood in his way, save only fit time and opportunity to settle this his determination: At last it chanced, that he espyed her all alone, sitting solitarily in her Chamber, which this Arch priest well observing, he came in and sat down by her: At last he began to behold her with

a

a smiling and jesting countenance, of all which (the Lady mistrusted nothing) for that she very well remembred his greatness with the Emperor, & his familiarity in the House; and she never so much as once dream'd or thought such an evil thought, as that he thereby would colour so filthy an Act, as to motion her to dishonour, especially towards the Emperor, his worthy Lord & Master, who so dearly esteemed of him, & so much affected him. But there is never more danger like to ensue, than when one of the same House intendeth treason. But at the last, after many gestures of impurity, and sitting still by this worthy and vertuous Lady, he began to utter his lascivious thoughts on this manner.

Right dear and Soveraign Lady (said he) I am your Servant and Chaplain, therefore I beseech you not to stop your Ears, but rather set them wide open to hear my rude words, especially, for that I am burnt up in affection towards your fair Person, and for whose love I have suffered intolerable torments in my fiery bosom: Know therefore, (my Redoubted Lady) that the beauty of your admirable person, and the supernal form wherein you are framed and composed, hath even ravished my spirits, broken my heart, split my whole selves in sunder, and quite bereft me of all rest, both by night & day, and only with doting upon your peerless beauty. Again (fair Lady) my meat, drink, manners, yea, and my very countenance; insomuch, that only my request, and prayers unto the Gods, is even this, that they would so enchant that heart of yours, that you would at length give consent unto me, your Vassel, that I might not only serve you, but also delight you in all those pleasures you are ordained unto. If, Lady, you refuse me, and cast me off, denying these my unrestless thoughts (than which nothing will sooner cut my heart in sunder) I can look for nothing but present Death, and rather covet therein to be locked fast, as in a prison, than receive a denial from those your fair lips. Alas! (fair Lady) you are Renowned in all the gifts of Nature: Fair, Amiable, Courteous, Gentle, and also Youthful; be not then the cause that I should determine my life by losing your love, but rather grant what I desire, and thereby make me for ever yours in hearty affection. But, fair Lady, happily you will urge, How dare you to offend the Gods in this unlawful Act? To this fair Lady, I answer, I am one of the Vicars of the gods upon Earth, and therefore it wholly Rests in my power, to absolve you of your Sins, and enjoyn your Pennance; which, trust me Lady, shall fall out to be but very easie, so you grant me love.

These speeches of his being ended, the Lady thereunto, out of a grave & prudent Carriage, made unto this perjur'd Priest, this excellent Represen-

sion and and answer: Ah! thou false, unjust, disloyal, and deviliſh *Prieſt*, ſtain to all thy profeſſion: How dareſt thou once open thy perjur'd mouth to ſuch a maſs of villanies, as thereon may enſue? First, as I may ſay, against the *Sacred Order*. Secondly, but moſt principally, against the Majeſty of that *Emperor* that ever nouriſhed thee in the bond of tender Compaſſion and love, and hath raiſed thee to great dignities, far unfit for ſuch a Devil-incarnate: And from whom may juſtly proceed the ſentence of condemnation, both on thee and me, if he ſhould but underſtand thy laſcivious and wicked practiſes. Thou (I ſay) Devil, and worſe than Devil, thou that ſhouldeſt be unto me inſtruction, and alſo a Guide to my life and converſation; in this thou goeſt about my utter Ruin and Deſtruction, by thy evil conditions, even beyond that good expectation which the *Emperor* truſteth to be in thee; O never grant (O ye Gods) that the Blood of *France*, from whence I am deſcended, nor the *Emperor*, my loving Lord, ſhould be ſo diſhonoured either by me in my body, or through my privity in any other manner. O falſe accurſed Man, behold whereunto thou wouldſt deliver me: Firſt unto the utter Ruin and ſpoil of mine honour; next, ſhut up my body in unremoveable ſhame for ever among Men; and laſtly, bring my Soul into the Jaws of Death and the Devil. Let fall, I ſay, all theſe thy vile and deviliſh provocations to luſt, and leave for ever hereafter to ſolicite me, or any other *Vertuous Creature* in this manner, which if thou further proſecute unto me, then can'ſt thou look for nothing but a ſhameful downfal, and a moſt damnable Death. Therefore with this anſwer depart, and ſee that ye attempt me no more.

This angry farewel, of the worthy Empreſs, ſtung the Prieſt at the very heart, but at that time durſt make no further reply unto the fair Lady concerning love, but as a Man all compoſed of rage and great fury, he then departed, diſcontent, at this his moſt unfortunate and unhappy chance. At the laſt, when he could no longer hold, he excuſed himſelf unto the Lady, craving pardon for theſe his bold, ſawcy, and raſh follies committed; but yet could find no Remedy to Reſtore his Honour. Thus being ſore troubled in mind, divers & ſundry ways he Reſolved what to do upon Revenge againſt this Innocent, which he accordingly affected by treaſon againſt the Lady: And ſeeing the *Emperor* knew nothing in this matter from the Empreſs *Bellifant*; how the Arch prieſt would have enticed her to diſhonour, and would have drawn her to diſloyalty to the *Emperor*, but he could not; therefore he began to accuſe her unto the *Emperor* for divers crimes: The Arch-prieſt having now begun to ſet abroach his deviliſh practiſes, began to think him how he might effect what he had determined, and alſo

pre-

preserve the Reputation of his former Honours which the *Emperor* had bestowed upon him, whereupon at last he Resolved, that he would cunningly, under the Cloak of dissimulation, bear fair weather towards the *Emperor*, as also seemed to shew how great care he had of his preservation, and to make known his loyalty and watchful care that he had towards the welfare of his Estate and Person: So it befel, that on a day when he espied a fit opportunity, and taking the *Emperor* all alone, he began to break with him on this manner.

Right High and Mighty *Emperor*, and my very good Lord and Master, I cannot chuse but recount and highly esteem of the many and innumerable favours, and great kindness which I have alwaies Received from your mighty Highness: Wherefore, as duty doth alwaies bind me, I am ever most watchful over the passages of your Estate, in which I now stand by You appointed; but especially in that You have made me sole Commander in Your House, and therein trusted me above all other: Therefore, it is my duty, to bewray unto You all those carriages that any way concern Your High and Mighty Person; wherefore I beseech Your Highness to give Ear to that which I shall now disclose unto You, for I had rather suffer all the torments of Death, than for to hide any thing from You; and the rather, for that it nearly toucheth Your Person and Honour: O *Emperor*! thus it is, *Bellisant*, Your Wife, and Sister to the King of *France*, she whom You have advanced to this State and Dignity, faileth in the duty and loyalty which she oweth unto her Dread Lord; for she wandreth in her love, giveth that unto another, which is proper only to Your self: To name the Person unto Your Majesty I will not, for you know I am a sacred Priest, and may not seek the blood of any Man; but yet, know for certain, that by the way of Confession, I came unto the light thereof, whereof I neither ought nor will bewray the name of him that thus Usurps Your Bed: But let it suffice, there is not a more unclean and lascivious Woman liveth in Your Court or Kingdom, whereby Your Life is in danger, Your Honour defamed, and my duty towards You approved by what I have told You. My advice therefore is, to be wary of Your Person, and correct this her folly, but yet mildly and wisely, always with the preservation of Your Honour. For will it not be a great shame among the Princes of the Earth, that You, having taken a Wife, Sister to a great King, one who for her Beauty is incomparable, her Nobleness and Wisdom is not to be outshined by any earthly Lady, and she to prove a Whore? And what worse is, one who daily desireth Your Death; which grieves my heart to think upon.

The *Emperor* having heard this long Accusation, little mistrusted the treachery of this *Arch-priest*, and gave Credit to all his fair but false words, and therewith he became extream pensive and sad: That his trust in her beauticus love, had been thus deceived. At last, having many days in several places uttered forth many discontented gestures, words and sighs, & many grievous acclamations, even in the Imperial Palace, he gave rest a while unto his discontented Passions: But wakened Revenge to wait upon a fitter opportunity. And upon a day, entering into the Chamber of his fair Lady *Bellisant*, without speaking any word to her at all, in a most fierce, rude, and unmannerly order, took his Lady by the Head, & pulling her by the Hair, he dragged her about the Chamber, throwing her on the ground in such a horrid manner, that the Blood besmear'd her Face in most inhumane sort. She Receiving from her Lord such unlook't for welcome, cried out in a lamentable manner, and as well as she was able, began to say. Alas! (my dear Lord) what moveth You to this unwelcome Outrage; I call all the gods to witness, I never did any thing in my life, either against Your *Honour* or *Life*, or ever *Prostituted* my *Body* to any *Strangers Love*. The *Emperor* not being thus satisfied, Replyed, saying, thou *Whore*, I am too well informed of thy proceedings; and curst be the day and hour that ever *I* saw thy deceivable Face; and therewithal, without all pitty, dashed her Head against the Ground, leaving her speechless, insomuch that all the Damsels, her Attendants, thought she had been quite Bereft of life. Upon this, there arose up in the Court a most pitiful Outcry, which the Counsellors and other Attendants, in the Court hearing, ran speedily to the Chamber, whereas they found this Lady in a Trance; at which disaster, all amazed, some ran to take up the Dead body of the *Empress*, others took upon them to speak to the *Emperor*, thinking thereby to stay the fury of this undeserved Rage, whose words unto him were as followeth: Alas! (*dread Soveraign*) what may be the cause of this Your sudden Passion, in delivering unto danger of Death, this so modest, chast, and noble Lady? A Lady so beloved of all Degrees, and in whom was never seen the least spark of Dishonour, neither towards You, nor any in this *Empire*: *Wherefore* our Request unto You is, that You would moderate Your wrong-conceived Anger against this harmless Lady. The *Emperor* nothing for all this Relenting, answered, *Speak no more, for I know, I see, I hear how cunningly she hath deluded me; therefore move me no further, for I am fully purposed to deliver her over to Death; and he or they who shall here-unto gainsay, I shall make him partaker in Death with this Wicked and disloyal Strumpet.* These *Words* were no sooner *Uttered*, but up Rose

roſe a worthy, wiſe, courageous and bold Baron, ſpeak unto the Emperor after this manner: Right worthy Sir, I could wiſh you to be well adviſed before you proceed further againſt this Lady, who is your eſpouſed Wife, Siſter to a great King, namely, *Pepin*, King of *France*, who when he ſhall hear of this great wrong done unto her, will out of a Courageous heart, and a Brotherly affection, muſter up all his Men of War, and ſuddenly ſurprize all our Towns, Wives and Children, forgetting mercy, and only perſuing Revenge upon us for theſe mercileſs and cruel Deeds unto his Siſter. Again, conſider on the other ſide, that the Lady is great with Child, therefore it is dangerous ſo Rudely to Smite and Wound her on this manner, wherein you have proceeded againſt her. The worthy Baron having thus ended his Advice, the Lady ſuddenly fell upon her knees before the Emperor, and in Tears very ſubmiſſive and lamentable thus ſhe ſpake.

Alaſs! (my Lord) take pitty on an Innocent Lady, for I am ſo free from any evil act, as I never ſo much as thought any evil againſt your Perſon or Dignity: At leaſt, my Lord, if your compaſſion be quite diſtinct from pittying me, yet pitty the Fruit of my body, for I am great with Child by you, of which the Gods grant me a joyful delivery. If nothing can appeaſe your anger towards me, then let my body be impriſon'd in ſome ſtrong Tower, till the time of my Delivery: and then do with my Body what pleaſeth You, ſo the Fruit of my body may be kept ſafe. In this dolorous paſſion ſhe proceeded ſo far, that what with her ſighs and tears following one another; it would have grieved the ſtoniſt heart that ever reſted in the boſom of the vileſt Tyrant that ever Reigned. All this nothing moved the hard-hearted Emperor, who was ſo wholly bewitched with the falſe and Traiterous Accuſation of the Arch-prieſt, that all Lenity ſet part, he burſt out in this manner: Thou falſe Strumpet, the Child thou goeſt withal is to me no Joy, but rather Diſhonour; for thy Diſloyalty hath made ſuch a ſeparation between us, that noting thy Diſſolute life, thou haſt made another Partner in my love. The Courtiers perceiving nothing could mitigate the Rage of the Emperor, by a common conſent removed her out of his Preſence into another Chamber, ſhewing unto her all the favour they could, both in Action and Geſture, although her fair Face was ſore deformed and beſmeared with Blood. Having thus conveyed her away, the Ladies that were Attendants, fetched water to waſh her Face, and did all they could to Revive her ever dying Spirits, Being thus in another Chamber, in comes *Blandiman* her 'Squire, who beholding her in this disfigured manner, for very pitty the water trickled down his cheeks,

and

and at the last began his speech in this manner. Ah! Madam, I plainly see that You are Traiterously handled, and wish that the gods would throw down their malignant Curses upon that Person that hath thus purchased Your extream miseries: But, gentle Lady, take comfort unto You, and trust me, if You will be Ruled by me, I will Conduct You back again into *France*, towards Your Brother's, who gave me and my service unto You, to attend You in all these misfortunes; all which I will, to the utmost of my power, undertake. Sweet Lady, follow my Counsel, and free Your self out of Danger; for be You assured, that if here You stay, the *Emperor* will prosecute Revenge upon You, and in the end bring You to a shameful Death. Unto this the sorrowful Lady made this Reply: Ah! *Blandiman*, I know thy faithful service towards me; but yet if I should follow thy advice, and steal out of this Country secretly, it would argue me Guilty of all that the *Emperor* throweth upon me, and thereby yield me Guilty of the Deed. Believe me, Servant, I had rather Die all the Deaths the World can put upon me, than to bear the blame of that, wherein I am innocent.

By this time the *Emperor*'s choler was somewhat pacified, by means of his Lords and Barons that attended, insomuch that he caused *Bellisant* to be quickly brought before him; when she was come, his heart trembled and fretted for very anger that he durst not put her to Death, fearing the great puissance and might of her Brother, King *Pepin*; and therefore burst forth into these speeches: Thou false and accursed Woman, by whom mine Honour is brought in question: I take the gods to witness, were it not for thy Brother's sake, the Valiant *Pepin*, King of *France*, I would make thee Fry in the Fire, as an Example to all fair Ladies; but, for his sake, I spare thy life; stand forth and hear thy Judgment, I Banish thee out of my Country and Empire; expresly commanding, that without any delay to morrow thou depart out of this City, and if thou be seen here any more I assure thee thou shalt suffer Death in all extremity. Also, I charge and command, that none of my Country dare be once so bold as to give aid, or accompany You, save only Your Servant *Blandiman*, whom You brought with You out of *France*. Go, get thee presently out of my sight, for thou shalt never more sleep in my Bosom. The *Emperor* having pronounced sentence against her, the Empress *Bellisant*, accompanied with her Servant *Blandiman*, speedily hasted to Horse, Being thus mounted, and then passing through the fair City towards one of the Gates thereof, there met her People in great multitudes, of degrees, much lamenting the loss of so fair a Lady, and so good an Empress. When she came to the utmost part, ever ready to go out of the Gates of the City, there was heard such a lamentable how

howling of mournful voices, that the like before was never heard in the City of *Constantinople*. When she was out of the Walls of the City, and just entered into the wide Fields, she began to fall into a Womanly fit of bitter weeping, to see how shameful and dishonourable she was handled causeless: Again, to think upon her Birth, and the Imperial Dignity from whence she was fallen, as also to account the misfortune wherein she was like to finish the rest of her days, it drove her at last from tears to utter her griefs in these words: Alas! in what unhappy hour was I born, to fall from so high an Estate to so low an Object of Poverty as I am now in? Woe is me the unhappiest amongst Women, now are all my Joys turn'd topsie-turvy, my laughter is turn'd into weeping, my songs converted into sighs; instead of cloath of Gold, wherewith I was wont to be cloathed, now I am glad of all manner of mean Attire; my precious stones of inestimable Value are all taken from me, and Pearls of tears stand over all my Garments. O ye Fields and Woods, to you I make my moan, for other Company I have none, consider my Exile, and help to bewail my Misfortune: O would the gods had pittied my distress, and made me the poorest among Creatures, then had not fortune given me so foul a fall; at least, my poor Estate would never have grieved me: Wherefore doth the beautious Sun send forth his beams on a Wretch so miserable? Why doth the Earth bear such a Creature, that is composed of Calamities; It is not possible for my Tongue to tell out my hearts sorrow: O wretched Man (whatsoever thou art) that by thy wicked Treason hath brought me to this downfal; I may well curse thee with bitterness of heart, for by thee only am I made thus Unfortune. Ah! my Brother, what shouldest thou do with such a woful Wight to thy Sister: It had been better I had never been born, than that I should prove such a stain to thy Kingly House. As she was thus complaining to her sacred Heart, the anguish thereof struck her into a swound as she sat on Horseback, and was like at that instant to have fallen off her Horse, e'er her Servant could alight and recover her; but he used all the speediest means for her Recovery; at last, she coming unto herself again, he said unto her: Alas, Madam, be not discomforted, neither let dispair so far sieze upon you, but trust ye that the Gods will keep and defend you for they are ready to aid and assist the Innocent. Having thus spoken, he suddenly 'spied a fountain, towards which, he and his Lady took their way, and being come thereunto, he set her down thereby, to ease and refresh her over tyred senses. Here at this spring leave we the Lady and her Squire, and turn we now to the traiterous *Arch-priest*, who was the cause of all these treacherous and evil Practises

Chap. III. *How the Arch-priest put on him the Habit of a Knight at Arms, and being well mounted, followed the Empress* Bellisant, *who was lately Banished. How* Bellisant, *in her Banishment, was Delivered of two fair Sons in the Wood, whose Names were* Valentine *and* Orson, *and how she lost them.*

THE Arch-priest having now wrought the banishment of fair *Bellisant*, thought with himself now he should surely accomplish his desire: Wherefore in all haste, he changed his white Rocket into a Coat of Steel, and begirt unto him a Sword; and being thus accoutred, he suddenly was mounted upon a milk white Steed, the fairest that could be had in all *Constantinople*: Being thus mounted, he made after her with all expedition, enquiring of all he met which way the Lady *Bellisant* was taken; who gladly told him which way she had passed. After some few hours Riding, at last he came to a great spacious Forrest and very long, taking the direct way towards the Lady. It chanced that as he was Riding forward, casting his Eye aside, he presently espied the Lady with her Servant *Blandiman*, sitting by a Fountain full of heaviness, lamenting her miserable fortunes; *Blandiman* using all the means he could to comfort her. This false Priest from forth his Beaver, well perceived it to be the Lady; but by reason of his disguise, she could not imagine him to be the Arch-priest, her Enemy; but coming nearer her, she soon discryed him, and being struck with a suddain fear, speap thus to her Servant: Alas, quoth she, I well perceive this to be the false Arch-priest that thus cometh towards us, of whom I am exceeding fearful, lest he be come to do me further Villany, Lady (said *Blandiman*) banish fear, for if he come after us to do you further harm, I will encounter him body for body, even as long as life lasteth. By this time that they had ended their speech to each other, the Arch-priest was ready to alight from his Horse to salute the lady in all Courteous behaviour; and, after he had made himself known unto her, he began to say unto her after this manner:

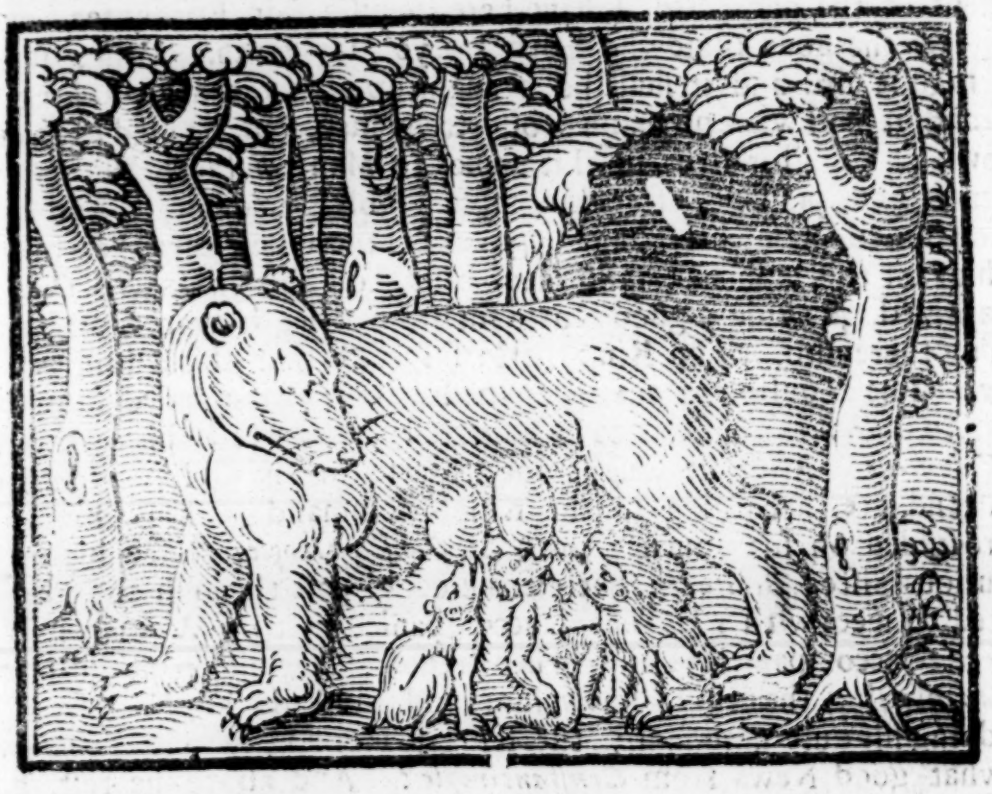
Right dear Lady, and our late honoured Empress; since then thy case is so pitiful, as to suffer Banishment by Sentance given against thee by the Emperor; so it is, that if thou wilt give me Entertainment in thy love, accept me into thy favour, and to grant me what I have long sought at thy hands; I will bring it to pass that the Emperor shall again recal thy Banishment, and make thy greatness of state shine more bright than ever before. Therefore advise you well; for I protest, what I offer to you, is only tending to your good and advancement. Ah! (quoth the Lady) thou

thou diſloyal and traiterous Adverſary, I have no great cauſe to beſtow love where my life hath been put in jeopardy. It is only thou that haſt wrought my overthrow, and thou it is, that makeſt me to ſpend the remnant of my days in more miſery than ever Lady is able to endure. Lady (quoth he) utter not forth ſuch Curſes againſt me, for I am come to you, not to vex or trouble you, but to heap upon you more joys than ever you as yet in all your life enjoyed. And in ſpeaking theſe words, he bended his body to the Lady, thinking to have kiſſed her; but *Blandiman* perceiving his intent, ſuddenly ſtarted between them, and gave the Arch-prieſt ſo mighty a ſtroak, that he felled him to the Earth, and with the violence of the blow, broke out one of his Teeth: The Prieſt had no ſooner recovered himſelf, but ſuddenly took him to his Sword, which *Blandiman* perceiving, took to him a Glave which he had about him; whereupon grew a ſore and dangerous Fight between them: This Encounter laſted ſo long, that they were both Wounded, but ſtill they continued Fighting, till at laſt it chanced a Merchant came by that way, who, perceiving afar off their fierce Encounter, cryed out with a loud Voice in this manner: Lords (quoth he) leave off, and ſhew the cauſe of this your Variance, and I will endeavour to end this Controverſie. Sir, quoth *Blandiman*, let us firſt try our Right by our Weapons, and afterwards we will be Ruled by Words. But the poor Lady could no longer bear ſilence, but began to tell the Merchant as followeth: *Alaſs!* (quoth ſhe) *as you ever pityed Woman, pity my Caſe; for this Man whom here you ſee armed, is the falſe and traiterous Arch-prieſt, that hath followed me to Rob me of mine Honour, and force me to his wicked and unſatiable luſt; alſo, this is he that hath made a ſeparation between me and the Emperor, my Lord and Husband.* The Merchant hearing her lamentable tale, pityed her miſery, and began thus unto the Arch-prieſt, Sir Prieſt, leave off your Enterprize, and dare not ſo much as to touch this Innocent Lady; for if the Emperor did but underſtand this Villany, he would ſoon end thy life in infamy, as thou well deſerveſt. As ſoon as the Arch-prieſt had heard his ſpeech, he forſook his Combat, and fled as faſt as he could through the Wood, for fear of being further known, being prevented of his purpoſe toward the Lady; though he conveyed his body out of ſight, yet his villanies were afterward diſcloſed. After his departure, the Lady was forced to ſtay ſtill in the Wood, all ſorrowful with her wounded Servant. The Merchant ſtaid with them ſome little time, bewailing the hard hap of the Lady; yet comforted her, ſaying, Alaſs! Lady, I ſee that this Arch-prieſt hath falſely betrayed you, and brought you in hatred with the Emperor; but I will promiſe you, that

it I live I will bewray all these Treacheries to the Emperor, and bring the Traitor to a shameful Death; and so, taking leave, I commend you to the gods, wishing that in these Extremities you would be patient, and Comfort your self in these your Sorrows: So with many thanks for his aid from *Blandiman*, the Merchant departed. The Merchant having left them, *Blandiman* set the Lady upon her Horse, and himself on his, so Riding on together, they came unto a lodging lying in their way, where they remained eight days, during which time her Servant was Recovered of his Wounds, and then set forward towards *France*; the Lady still sorrowful and complaining in this manner: *Alas!* Blandiman, *what may my* Brother *and the Peers of* France *think of this, when they shall understand that I am expelled* Greece *for such a dishonourable Deed; and as a Common Harlot, banished from the Emperor of* Constantinople? *Alas! I am perswaded that the* King, *my* Brother, *will easily believe that I am Guilty of the Deed, and in his Anger deliver me over to a shameful Death. Lady (quoth he) be not thus discouraged, but trust in the gods, who will Revenge your Injury, and pay it home upon the Offenders Head.* During the time of these discourses, they had passed many Countries and Regions, till at last they came into *France*, and passing by *Orleance*, they took their way towards *Paris*, where King *Pepin* was accustomed to Sojourn. So entring into a Forrest near unto *Orleance*, there hapned new miserys unto this Empress, of which more hereafter ensueth.

Bellisant (*as before you heard*) being with Child, was suddenly overtaken in the Forrest; the time of her Delivery being come, caused her to forsake her Horse, and begin to complain to her Servant in this manner: Alas! (quoth she) help, help, I say to lay me down softly under yonder great Tree; and when I am laid, make haste and find me the help of Women, whersoever thou canst get any, for I can go no further, my pains so much increaseth upon me *Blandiman*, her Servant, did as she commanded, and for that he knew not how to find the same place again; he set a special Mark, that he might the readier come thither again, and so betaking him to Horse, he Rode forth swiftly to seek some Women to help this distressed Lady. He being gone, the Lady was left Comfortless all alone without succour of any Creature, so that at last she was Delivered of two fair Sons in the Dissolate Forrest: These Children were no sooner come into the World, but a fresh Misery, worse than all the rest that she had Endured, happened to this Lady; for as she lay upon the Earth under the

the Tree, and her two Infants by her, ſuddenly came to her a huge Bear, moſt terrible to behold, and took up one of the Infants in her mouth, and with great pace haſted into the teickeſt of the Forreſt: This ſtrange and unlookt for accident, frighted the diſtreſſed Lady to the Soul, that ſhe



cryed out moſt lamentably, getting upon her hands and feet, to haſten after the Bear, which was quickly got out of her ſight But, alas! it little availed her to make any further purſuit, for ſhe never came unto the ſight of the Child, till by Miracle it was at length diſcloſed. So long wandred this *Lady* up and down from place to place, weeping and crying out for her Child, that being over-wearied with Travel, ſhe fell into a great ſickneſs, inſomuch that at laſt ſhe was thereby near deprived of her life, and immediately fell into a ſwound upon the cold Earth, as if ſhe had yielded up the Ghoſt. In this Extaſie, leave we her, and now proceed to the other Child, which ſhe left under the Tree:

It hapned the ſame day that her Brother, King *Pepin*, had taken his journey from *Paris*, (accompanied with divers great *Lords* and *Barons*) towards *Conſtantinople*, to viſit his Siſter, *Belliſant*; and ſtriking

through *Orleance*, he made such haſt, that he entered into the ſame Forreſt, whereas his baniſhed Siſter was lately Delivered of her two Children, but knowing nothing what hapned. Now as the King paſſed through this Forreſt, he eſpyed, lying under a Tree alone, the other Son of *Belliſant*, which when he ſaw, he ſaid unto his Attendants: My Lords, by the appointment of the gods, ſee, I have here found a fair Encounter, even a Child. By the gods (ſaid the Lord) you ſay truth. Why, ſad the King, take it up, and it ſhall be brought up at my charge ſo long as it liveth, and it ſhall want no manner of Attendance, but be uſed as it were mine own: For if it lives until it comes to Man's Eſtate, I'll endow it with lands and poſſions after the moſt Nobleſt manner. And therewith, calling to one of his 'Squires, gave him the whole care thereof, ſaying to him on this manner: hold thee, bear thou this Infant to *Orleance*, ſee it Baptized, provide a good Nurſe for it, and let it want nothing appertaining thereunto. The King little ſuſpected that this Child was his Nephew. The 'Squire, as the King had before commanded him, bore the Child to *Orleance*, cauſed it to be Baptized, and gave it his own Name, called *Valentine*. After he ſought out a Nurſe for the Child, and gave it great Attendance, according to the King's command. This done, the King proceeded on his Journey towards *Conſtantinople*, to ſee his lovely and beautious Siſter *Belliſant*; but e'er he could paſs through the Forreſt, he chanced to meet with *Blandiman*, accompanied with a Woman that he had gotten to accompany his Lady, in her greateſt extremity of Child-birth: *Blandiman* eſpying the King, knew him, and ſuddenly alighted from his Horſe, doing his duty unto him; the King perceiving it to be *Blandiman*, asked, what good News from *Conſtantinople*? And above the reſt, how doth our Siſter *Belliſant*? *Blandiman* anſwered, moſt Gracious Soveraign, I bring you but little tydings, yet thoſe I bring are bitter and ſharp: For, amongſt the reſt, I muſt tell you ſtrange News of your loving Siſter, and how ſhe fares: Wherefore, ſo it is, that by force of Treaſon, and falſe Suggeſtion of the Curſed Arch-prieſt of *Conſtantinople*, your Siſter is Baniſhed out of the Emperor's Court and Dominions; and but for the great mercy of the Lords of the Emperor's Court, and others, ſhe had been publickly put to Death, and burnt to Aſhes in the ſight of all the People. King *Pepin* having heard the lamentable Relation of *Blandiman*'s Report, being exceeding outragious and fierce in anger, and yet ſorrowful withal, brake out in ſpeech moſt bitterly againſt her on this manner: Now, by the gods, quoth he, I hold the Emperor no upright Judge, in that he ſpared the life of my Siſter: For I ſwear, that

if

if I had her here now in my possession, I would not Rest, till by Death I had made her an Example to all false Ladies, while the World endureth. And therewithal, commanded all his Train of Lords, and others, to stay their Journey, and make their Return back again to *Paris*: For the grievous offences of my Sister, here stays my Journey; and so he departed, without asking any more questions, but turning his Horse's head, sorrow overcame his Courage, and at last made him break forth into these words: Ha! (quoth he) how many Men are deceived in Women? Now am I utterly prevented of all my purposes, for my only hope rested in the Modesty of my Sister *Bellisant*; yea, and in her stood all my joys and pleasure: Again, to have had the Emperor *Alexander* still my Brother, and fast Friend at all Assaies, and in all my necessities was my only Hope and Joy of heart; and now, behold, by her I'm Disappointed, Defamed, and shut out into eternal Dishonour. And so in that distrust and melancholly, King *Pepin* Returned towards *Orleance*. When *Blandiman* perceived the Courage of the King to be thus daunted, he durst relate no further News of the Lady *Bellisant*; but, leaving the King, took his way towards the Tree where he lately left her in great pain of Child birth; being come thither, he sought her every where, but could hear no tydings of her: wherefore being sorrowful, he knew not what way to take. Being in this Extasie, at last he tyed his Horse to a Thorn Tree, and began to make a closer search than before; wherein he was so Vigilant, that anon he espyed her, finding her flat upon the Earth, in a manner speechless, for very grief of heart she had lost her Child, which the Bear had bore away from her. *Blandiman* being glad, that now at last he had found her, kindly Embraced her, and taking her up in his Arms from the cold Earth, set her upon her feet, and began thus unto her: Alas! (dear Lady and Mistress) how happened you to stray thus far from the place I left you in?

The Lady looking upon him with a ghastly countenance, Replyed thus, Ah, *Blandiman*! my dolors and distresses daily increase upon me; for thou wert no sooner gone to get me the help of some Woman kind, but, I being Delivered of two Babes, a Ravenous Bear from the Forrest assailed me, and bare away one of them; I, although weak, making what poor shift I was able, followed that Ravenous Beast, thinking by strong hand to have Recovered again my loss, but all in vain, I could not overtake the Bear, nor, wanting my Strength, Recover back again to the Tree, where I left my other Infant. *Lady* (quoth he) the other Infant; Why, I my self but lately came from the Tree, and I am well assured that there lay no Infant there, nor near thereabout. How (quoth the *Lady*) no Child

under

under the Tree? With theſe words ſhe was ſo inwardly wounded, that ſhe fell down into a ſwound; which *Blandiman* eſpying, ſaved her (in what he could) and fell into brinniſh tears for ſorrow, to ſee his Lady ſo extreamly plunged, and over-whelmed, and at laſt led her towards the Tree, where ſhe had left the Child; but when ſhe ſaw the other Child alſo gone, think then what dolour of heart the poor Lady endured; in the midſt of all which ſorrows ſhe thus beſpake: Alas (quoth ſhe) can there be in the World a more deſolate Wretch? on every ſide compaſſed with grief, yea, and all unſupportable ſorrows But, alaſs, Emperor, thou art the cauſe, and haſt been the only means to deliver me over even to Death, and that wrongfully, without cauſe on my part, and only by deceivable Counſel haſt thou bereft me of thy Company; but here I call all the gods to witneſs, that I was never faulty to thee in my body, nor diſobedient unto thee in any point; wherefore, once again I am forced to cry out for Vengeance upon the Offender's head, whoſoever: Firſt, for my Diſgrace; next for my baniſhment; and now, laſtly, for the loſe of my two Babes iſſued from the blood-royal of the Emperor of *Conſtantinople*. But ſeeing all theſe miſeries have been tyred themſelves upon my very heart, come Death, and finiſh what ſorrows do but prolong. All this while *Blandiman* was Ear-witneſs of all theſe pitteous plaints, inſomuch that he grew even weary of her wailing, and in the beſt manner he could, comforted her dying ſpirits, by falling to intreat her, that ſhe would ſomewhat give over moans, and betake herſelf to her feet: Whereupon ſhe gave conſent, he accompanied her with a Woman he had brought with him, came into a Neighbouring Village, whereas they lodged and nouriſhed her, till ſhe had partly recovered her ſtrength, and in ſome meaſure forgotten the depth of her miſeries. *Blandiman* began to break with his Lady on this manner: Lady (quoth he) it was my chance in looking you in the Woods, to light upon your Brother, King *Pepin*, who demanded of me what Tydings? But his brows were bent, and full of anger againſt you; wherefore my Counſel is, that you make not towards him, for by that countenance I well perceive, you ſhall have but ſlender welcome: For upon further Queſtions demanded, and anſwered, ſo ſoon as he heard me tell that the Emperor had Exiled you, he lightly gave Credit that yours was the fault, and therefore he lays all the blame on you. O! (quoth the Lady) now what I moſt feared is come to paſs; and I well perceive that I am beſet with Adverſaries on every ſide: Well, be it as it may be; the Emperor hath Exiled me without cauſe: What then ſhall I do? I will never Return again to *Paris*, but take my way into ſome Remote land, where my body with my faults ſhall be ſmothered;

thered; for my Brother's anger is grown so great that he could willingly deliver me over to Death; therefore it is better to fly and save my life then fall into the fury of so angry a Brother. This doleful speech she delivered in tears; which *Blandiman* perceiving, said unto her, Lady, leave off your Tears, for be assured of my faithful fidelity; and here I offer my self, life, and all to be at your Service, go whither you please. Why then (quoth the Lady) since thou art so Resolute, let us Resolve upon some strange Adventure, and therewithal passed forth to expose themselves to future dangers, where now we shall be forced to leave them with sorrowful Hearts, and return again to speak something of the Bear, that carried away one of the Children.

Chap. 4. *Of the Bear that bore away one of the Children.*

THE Bear (as you have heard before) that had carried away one of the Children, all this while had offered it no violence, but bare it unto her Cave, which was dark and obscure: in this Cave the old Bear had four young ones, amongst whom she laid the Child to be devoured, but mark the chance, and you shall find it at last miraculous; for all this while the young Bears did it no harm, but with their rough paws stroaked it softly. The old Bear perceiving they did not devour it, shewed a Bearish kind of favour toward it: insomuch, that she kept it, and gave it suck among her young ones, the space of one whole Year. This Child, by reason of the nourishment it received, became rough all over like a beast; and as he grew in strength, began to range up and down the Woods, and when he met with other beasts would smite them, and got such mastery over them, that they began to shun the place wherein he came, *he* was so extream fierce amongst them: And in this beast-like estate, passeth *he the* term of fifteen Years, growing up to such strength, that scarce any man or beast in the forrest durst stir abroad, fearing to fall into his Hands, lest he should put them to Death, and after eat their flesh; more like unto a ravenous wild beast, than any humane Creature: his name was call'd *Orson*, because a Bear had been his Nurse, and also was grown rough like a Bear. This Bear-man lived so long in the Forrest, that none (were he never so hardy) durst abide his presence: The Renown of this Wild-man grew so great and spread so far abroad, over all the Realm of *France*, that they of the Country round about chased and hunted him, but prevailed not, for he never feared weapons nor engines, but passed through them all, shaping them in pieces: All this time *he* abode in *the Forrest*, you must understand, *he neither* wore Garment, nor *had* any kind of *Speech*.

Here we leave the wild-man in the Forrest, and look a little what became of the Lady *Bellisant*, and her Servant *Blandiman*; and we shall suddenly find them wandring and travelling through divers Lands and Countries; the Lady ever remembring and bewailing the loss of her two Children, wishing that if it were possible, they might be still in safety. But in the midst of her sorrowful wishes, yet passed on their weary journey, sometime by sea, sometime by land, till at length she came to a Port in *Portugal*, on the *which* did stand an invincible Castle, kept by a Giant, called *Ferragus*, so great, and of such puissence, that there was not a Horse to be found could bear the living trunk of this Giant. It so happened at this Castle, that every ship that passeth by this Port, was to pay tribute to this Giant, *which* he himself did daily come aboard to Receive. At length he came into the ship, wherein the Lady *Bellisant*, and her Squire had passed (for she was laden with all manner of rich Merchandize) so casting his eyes abont, he espied *Bellisant*, which he kindly took by the hand, and led her into the Castle to his Wife (for he was married to a beautiful lady) *blandiman* followed his Lady also, fearing the Giant, but he behaved himself so nobly, that he did not offer her any violence, but presented her to his Wife, who received her gladly, and had great joy at the gracious presence of so beautiful a Lady. The Giant having charged his Wife to use her and *blandiman* her Squire honourably. During her abode in the Castle, she would often shed tears, when she *thought her* of the loss of her two Children; *which the Lady* of the Castle perceiving, would often comfort her in the best manner she could, and ever placed her near her own person, for the joy and pleasure that she ever took in her company. Within this Castle she tarried a long time, and here we must leave her, and now we will return back again to tell you something of the Emperor of *Constantinople*, and the false *Arch-Priest*.

Chap. V. *How, by the Counsel of the Arch-priest, new Customs, and Taxations were raised through the City of* Constantinople; *and how the Treason came to light. How the Emperor, by the Counsel of his Nobility, sent for King* Pepin, *to see the Combate fought between the Arch-priest and the Merchant.*

THE Emperor having shamefully expelled *his* Wife, oftentimes repented him of the fact: But by the curst counsel of the Arch priest unto whose words he gave such credit continually, that what he spake, was an Oracle in the Ears of the said Emperor, insomuch, that he contin-

all

ally heaped new honours upon that traiterous Prieſt, advancing him even above the *higheſt* in the Empire; and whatſoever he commanded was effected. At laſt, having gotten all power and authority in his Hands, he began to enhance the cuſtoms and taxes of the City of *Conſtantinople*; *which* exactions of his, againſt all reaſon, ſtruck even to the very hearts of the Inhabitants. Among the Reſidue of theſe his forced impoſitions (it hapned, that according to their yearly cuſtoms) there was held a great Mart in the City, *which* falls out about the Month of *September*: Hereunto reſorted many People for divers occaſions, eſpecially Merchants. The Fair or Mart-day being come, the *Emperor* gave the charge thereof unto this *Arch-prieſt*, who accordingly provided himſelf, and to the ſame purpoſe, Armed two hundred Men to guard his own Perſon: Being thus accompanied, he took his way into the City, to effect this new charge, *which* the Emperor had beſtowed on him. It chanced ſo, that among the reſt of them that ſold Wares, the Merchant was there preſent (of whom you have heard before) namely he that came Riding by the way *which Blandiman* (the diſtreſſed Lady *Belliſants* Eſq;) and the treacherous *Arch-prieſt* was Fighting. The *Arch-prieſt* perceived him well enough, but would take no knowledge of him, for he was very fearful, leaſt all his villany ſhould come to light. The preſence of the Merchant much troubled the *Arch-prieſt*, inſomuch, as he wiſhed (if it were poſſible) his death, and would aſſuredly have effected the ſame, by the Authority that he now had in his hands; but ſtill he feared ſome great tumult would ariſe thereby. Now mark what followed: The Merchant, among the reſt, was richly furniſhed with coſtly wares; as cloath of Gold, Silver, Silk, *&c.* Whereby he received great Wealth, and took more Mony than any five Merchants beſide: The Fair being ended, the *Arch-prieſt* ſent forth his Officers to demand and Receive his accuſtomed Duties, due upon the Sale of thoſe Merchandizes: One Officer came unto this Merchant, and ſaid, Sir, you muſt pay Ten-pence on every Pound that you have taken, for ſo it is ordained by the Great Officer to whom it belong. The Merchant hereat being angry, ſaid, *Curſed be that diſloyal Arch-prieſt, for he is the only cauſe of theſe new-raiſed exactions: It had been good for all Men, if he had long ſince had his deſert, and with ſhame and infamy had ended his Days.* At *which reproachful* words againſt the *Arch-prieſt*, the Officer took his ſtaff, and ſmote the Merchant on the Head, that preſently the blood guſhed out. Then the *Merchant*, feeling the blood about his ears, drew his ſword, and ſtruck ſo hard upon the Officer, that he laid him at his feet for Dead. Upon this aroſe a great rout throughout the Fair, inſomuch,

that the rest of the Officers coming up to help their Fellow, took the Merchant, and brought him before the Arch-priest; The Arch-priest, glad of this opportunity, would suddenly have put him to Death: but the Merchant appealed to Justice, to have his cause tryed by the Law. The Arch-priest, fearing the People, sent him away to the Emperor, for nothing could satisfie him but his life: But mark, in seeking the life of the Merchant, he purchased his own Death, as hereafter followeth: The Arch-Priest caused the Merchant to be brought into the Emperors Palace; whereas he in Person sat as Judge. The Emperor being set, the Arch-priest brought his Advocate to plead his cause, *which* was to this effect: That the Merchant had committed Murther; and also had spoken opprobrious Words against the said Arch-priest. The Advocate having ended his accusation, the Merchant suddenly fell on his knees before the Emperor, and said, Mighty, and most excellent Prince, out of your benignity, give me but Audience to be heard, before these your Nobles here attending, and I shall unfold a matter of so great Importance, that it touches your Person, even in the highest degree of Treason. Say on, said the Emperor. Mighty Emperor, and my Lords all, I would advise you to make fast the gates round about your Palace, that none depart from this place. The Emperor, did as he requested. Then said the Merchant with a loud Voice, *Lords, Barons, and Knights, all you that love the honour of the Emperor, and the triumphant Reign of his Person, attend my words; the time is come that the Treason of the cursed Arch-priest will now be revealed, and come to light: Then thus great Emperor, this is that cursed Man, whom you have ever nourished, and brought to great honour, who hath deceived your trust; for he it is that hath wrought all the discord betwixt you and your Vertuous Lady, whom you have banished, both from your Bed, Court, and Country, and by whom you have received more dishonour, than ever he reaped honour from you: For it had been his part most of any, to have nourished and advanced your Renown, and to have preserved your Honour; but contrary he hath made my dread Lord, infamous by these his wicked projects, and brought upon you great scandal among all Nations; for he secretly, and underhand, made love to the Empress, but she denyed him; the which he perceiving, that there was no likelihood to accomplish his desire, it drove him into a thousand fears, least this his disloyal act should come to light, and therefore devised to falsifie unto your Ears, her faithful love unto your bed. Of all which his false Accusations, I say here before you, and all your Lords and* Barons, *that he lieth like a Traytor, and for the more approbation of what I have uttered, I will here unfold*

the

the truth of what these eyes of mine were Witnesses: It so hapned on a day, after the banishment of the Empress, as I was riding about my affairs, I chanced to travel thro' a Wood; at last, passing along the way, I found this treacherous Priest, transformed out of the habit of his Priesthood, into the shape of a Knight, even armed at all points ready for combate with the Enemy. Drawing nearer and nearer, I did behold him in fight with another man unarmed, which at last I found to be *Blandiman*, Squire to the banished Lady, who conducted her in the time of her Exile. I perceiving they encountred one another so fiercely, I began to call unto them, to give over their direful fight; but they little regarded what I said. I did perceive the Lady piteously weeping, and at last said unto me thus: Gentle Merchant, and kind friend, lend me thy aid against this treacherous Arch-priest, that seeketh by force to rob me of mine honour. This is he, and only he, by whom I am banished from my Emperor's bed and Country. With that I put spurs to my Horse, and ran between them, to separate them, which the Arch-priest perceiving, suddenly fled into the Wood, being fully assured I had the knowledge who he was. Noble Emperor, it had been my part to have revealed this long before, but I durst not open my mouth unto you, for fear his greatness would have outswayed my truth, and so have brought my self to an untimely death.

The Emperor having heard this Tale, sighed, and at last fell into tears, in *which* tears he turned him to the Arch-Priest, relating his disloyalty in this manner: Ah! thou false Servant (quoth he) have I ever studied to do thee Honour, and exalt thee to high dignities, and hast thou requited all my love and trust with disloyalty and treasons? Well, I have seen now what I ever mistrusted, thou hast made me of all Men most unhappy; but it is not so much thy fault, as mine own; thy treason *hath* bewitched me: In an evil hour *I* gave credit to thy false speaking tongue, and thereby deserve to carry the brand of my own folly. The Arch-priest hearing the Emperor thus distempered, began to entreat his Highness not to be so impatient, neither to give credit to this slanderous tale, that the Merchant had commenced against him: For (quoth he) he belyeth me: and I am no way Guilty of that wherewith he accuseth me. Thou lyest falsly (quoth the Merchant) thou canst not excuse thy self in what *I* have charged thee withal: And if thou stand still in the Denial, *I* challenge thee by the single Combate, to maintain the Truth; and try my Quarrel: And hereunto *I* throw down my Gage, and withal tender my body thereunto, for to make good what i have here spoken: And more than that, e'er Night shut in, *I* will deliver thy body to Death, or yield

my self vanquished. The Emperor seeing the Merchant so resolute, and to stand to the trial of the Combate, he said, Arch-priest, it is time that either thou quit thy self by answering this Challenge, or to yield thy self Guilty of what *hath* been laid to thy charge. The *Arch-priest* replied on this manner, Mighty Emperor, I must let you understand, that to answer the Merchant's challenge, or take up arms, is contrary to my place and calling, for I am a sacred Prelate of the *Church*, and therefore I may refuse to fight. Nay, quoth the *Emperor*, in this case no excuse is to be admitted; but you must either fight, or yield your self a Traytor to our Crown and Dignity. At these Words the *Arch-priest* was somewhat troubled in mind, yet at last he was fain to accept the Combate, because the *Emperor* charged him so deeply: And besides he could have no excuse admitted. So the *Emperor* commanded them both to safe keeping, till such time he had sent Letters to King *Pepin* of *France*; but in conclusion, the traytor had his desert, as *hereafter* followeth:

The day of the Combate being appointed, and the field prepared, tydings came to the *Emperor*, that King *Pepin* was come to *Rome*, to the aid of the Pope against the Infidels. The *Emperor* hearing thereof, by the grave Counsel of the Lords, dispatched Ambassadors thither, with command to bring King *Pepin* to *Constantinople*, meaning thereby to make him an Eye witness of these contentions, and of the cause of this Combate, *which* was to prove the *Arch-priest* a *Traitor*, and also to hold the *Emperor* excused, in that he had, by his false accusations banished his *Empress*. The Ambassadors thus dispatched, you must imagine, that after long Travel at last they came to *Rome*, whereas they found King *Pepin*, as before was told them: King *Pepin* having heard of their coming, gave them entertainment appertaining to their several degrees; all *which* being done, the Ambassadors thus spake: Great Lord, we present these Letters from *Alexander*, your Brother, Emperor of *Constantinople*, our Lord and Master, of *which* we intreat a speedy answer. King *Pepin* took the letters graciously, and read them; and having *throughly* considered the contents, with a loud voice, he said, My Lords, by the gods, here's much matter of tydings, and also of as great admiration: the *Emperor* greets me well, and sends me word that my Sister *Bellisant*, his betroathed Wife, *hath* been by him wrongfully banished, and that by reason of a false *Arch-priest*, unto whom he gave too much trust: *which* Priest, for these his treasonable facts, is accused by a Merchant; and for tryal of the truth of this his accusation will put himself in jeopardy of life, by single combate in open field, body to body, with this treacherous *Arch-priest*. Now it is so fallen out

tha

that the day and place is ready for the tryal of his Fact, whereby, I shall be fully satisfied, *whether* my Sister *hath* been guilty of that *wherewith* she *hath* been charged, and most shamefully cast forth into banishment: Upon all *which*, I vow by my Crown and Dignity, that if the Emperor be found to have offered this indignity, without just cause, that I will be avenged against him in the extreamest manner that War can thunder forth against him. Having ended his speech unto his Lords, in presence of the Ambassadors, he Commanded with speed, that every man should address himself to accompany him to *Constantinople*, to behold the manner of this fight, between the *Merchant and the Arch-priest*. The day of his departure from *Rome* being come, he takes his way towards *Constantinople*, where, after some few days of travel, he safely arrived. The Emperor hearing of his coming, commanded all the Bells to be rung, and made triumph to welcome him, for all were filled with joy at his approach. The *Emperor*, mounted on Horse back, richly accompanied, marched out of the City, to meet his Brother, King *Pepin*. At last they met; but the *Emperor* overcome with sorrow and tears, at the remembrance of *Belisant*, could not utter a Word. On the other side, *Pepin* being fiercely augred at what had hapned to his Sister, gave no Respect unto the Emperor's tears, but proudly began to gird him in this manner: Emperor (quoth he) leave off your lamentations, and shake off these weeds of sorrow, that you seem to weep for my Sister; so he that *hath* a Harlot to his Wife, I account him mad to grieve at her misbehaviour; and since my Sister *hath* proved such a one, let her go and take care of herself, she is not worthy of so much as one tear from such an eye of Majesty.

Nay, nay, said the *Emperor*, *speak not evil against your Sister, for I am now fully perswaded, she is composed of all vertue and honesty, and that against all equity, I have banished her out of my Country.* Think you so now? (*quoth King* Pepin) then are you worthy of a double shame, and you do bewray unto the World your weakness, and what great foolishness remains in you, when as by the Report of one Man, and that a Traytor too, you would with such rigor proceed against an innocent Lady, and so suddenly (like a common Harlot) throw her out into banishment, shame, and dishonour, being of the Blood-Royal of *France*. The Emperor hearing the King to be so bitter against him, he was very sorrowful, and said unto him in this manner. *Alas! my Lord, do not thus follow me with wrath and anger, but rather turn your Tongue upon some milder saying, for to that intent have I sent for you, that your own eyes may be witness of the truth.* 'Tis true, quoth King *Pepin*, but it is all too late what now you say, for

you

you have delivered over my Sister to the World's infamy, and that more is, even to banishment; and (for ought I know) to death it self, for I know not whether I shall ever behold her face again, or not: Fie, fie, that you being so great a Person, should be so affectionately born away, to give such sudden Judgment against the Innocent; I do confess, one may commit a foul and dishonourable act, but repentance is able to make amends, and not so suddenly to overthrow their Dignity and Renown: For that once lost, whether it be right or wrong, it is never again possible to be recovered. Again, how little you have esteemed of the honour of my Kingly Office, judge you, when first without deliberation, and next without any knowledge given me, you have proceeded so against my Sister? I make it plain against you, that envy towards her and me was the only cause of these false and unjust wrongs done against us. Whilst these words passed betwixt them, they were now entered *Constantinople*, where with great joy and gladness they were received of the Inhabitants, The Emperor would have had King *Pepin* to have lodged with him in his Pallace, but the King denyed, and caused his Train to lodge within the City, and he himself also. Then the Emperor caused many gifts and presents to be offered him, but he disdainfully rejected them: For King *Pepin* thought of nothing but the dishonour unto his Sister, and that the rather, for the whole City accounting her the fairest, and most vertuous, and the chastest Lady in all the World, and that by injustice and treason, she was banished.

Chap. *VI. How the Merchant, and High-priest encountred at the place appointed, about the clearing the Lady* Bellisant, *and what a glorious Victory did betide the Merchant. How King* Pepin, *after the Combat, returned into* France; *and after sailed to* Rome, *to Fight the* Sarazens *that had surprised the City.*

NOW was the day appointed come for the Combate, between the *Arch-priest and the Merchant*: wherefore every thing was made in readiness, according to the Command of the Emperor. At last there came both the Combatants into the Field, and presented themselves before the Emperor, being both before the Emperor, his Attendants, Knights, and others, and the *Arch Priest* armed in a most sumptuous armour of proof, all imbost with Gold and Pearl, which made such a glittering shew, that it dazled the eyes of the Beholders. Being thus richly armed, the *Arch-priest* came forth into the field, and took his place appointed him, at the one end of the List: The Emperor beholding the glorious shew that the

Arch-

Arch-prieſt made in his arms, called forth the Merchant, cauſing him firſt to kneel down, and in the preſence of the Aſſembly, dubbed him Knight; then commanded he, that a moſt rich armor ſhould be put upon him, in the preſence of King *Pepin*, who, during the time he was arming, promiſed unto this Merchant, if he overcame the Arch prieſt, to advance him to great livings, and high authority. Theſe two adverſaries being now in readineſs, and each having their blazon about their Necks, their Horſes were brought forth, and they proudly mounted, ready to give Battle: The Emperor gave ſtrict Charge unto all his Officers of arms, to have a ſpecial Eye upon the Arch-prieſt, for fear, leſt on the ſudden, he ſhould flie the field, or run away from them, as they would anſwer it with their lives The Merchant being mounted, and his ſword girt to him, firſt entred the liſts, after whom entred ſuch abundance of People, that they were numberleſs. Then after came the Arch-prieſt, ſumptuouſly accompanied with Nobles and Knights, of great honor and dignity. The Combatants thus both entred the liſts, ready to charge one another; King *Pepin* being there in perſon, called out aloud unto the Merchant, ſaying unto him, My friend, the gods give thee Victory againſt this falſe Traitor, I vow unto thee here, before this Aſſembly (ſo I may but find out the truth of my Siſter *Belliſant*) notwithſtanding the great advancement that the Emperor hath promiſed, to take thee into *France*, and make thee Companion with the beſt of my Kingdom. The Merchant gave the King great thanks, and ſaid, Dread King, I doubt not but this night to make this trayterous Prieſt confeſs, that he hath treacherouſly ſought the deſtruction of your Siſter. Then came a Herauld, adminiſtring to them both an oath; and ſo, clearing the liſts, left the Champions to their Fortunes. Now are both the Combatants ready to ſet forth, and the Marſhals of the field brought each of them a Spear, which they no ſooner had received, but they put ſpurs to their Horſes, and ran with ſuch violence together, that their ſpears were broken to their hands, then they began to ſet forward to another courſe, charging each other with their ſwords, in ſuch violent manner, that with their fury, they redounded from their Armour to the ground, cutting off whole quarters of their Corſlets, and left them as a prey for thoſe that attended the fight. The Arch-prieſt ſeeing himſelf ſo ſtiffly matched, gave over the fight, till towards the Evening, for ſuch was the cuſtom of the Country, that in any challenged combat, either party might refuſe to follow the fight ſo eagerly, but that they might have a breathing time, ſo the Combatant were yielded vanquiſhed before ſun-ſet, or elſe abide the ſentance of death) thinking thereby to weary out the Merchant; which the Merchant perceiving, he prepa-

red to receive the Arch-prieſt couragiouſly, when he encountered him; *which* not being long after, the Merchant ſo redoubled his ſtroaks, that he ſmote off one of his Ears, and his ſteel habergion, and with the violence of the ſame blow, the Merchant's ſword fell from his hand; which the *Arch prieſt* ſeeing, put ſpurs to his horſe. and charged him with ſuch violence, that he ran againſt the Merchant's horſe, and thruſt out one of his Eyes; the Horſe

ſeeling himſelf hurt, ran up and down as mad, leaping and curvetting ſo furiouſly, that he unhors'd his Rider, and ſo hard was the fortune of the Merchant, that in his fall, his foot hung in the ſtirrop, whereby he was brought into great danger, the horſe hurrying him along the field, that all were very ſorrowful to behold this lamentable Spectacle, and with the amazement thereof, grew deſperate in their hopes. King *Pepin* alſo was ſo diſcouraged at this diſaſterous chance, that the tears did even trickle down his Cheeks, uttering many ſilent ejaculations againſt the unkindneſs of Fortune.

Now that *which* was moſt miraculous. was, all this time, that the Mer-

chan

chant was dragged up and down the field, the *Arch-prieſt* could not inforce his Horſe to come up unto the Merchant, but fled out to and fro, whereby he could not make a prey upon the Merchant, as he intended to do But ſee, at the laſt, the Merchant's Horſe fell down, by which means the Merchant got his leg from forth the ſtirrop, and at laſt, got upon his feet like a valiant and hardy Champion: the Prieſt perceiving the Merchant had recovered his legs, came running with ſtrong violence upon him, and thereby lent him five or ſix blows upon his ſhoulders, that the poor Merchant was even aſtoniſhed. At laſt, he was forced to give back to recover breath, and in a little ſpace, finding himſelf ſomewhat relieved, he ſubtilly gave a freſh aſſault upon the *Arch-prieſt*, againſt whom he ſtruck with ſuch Violence, that the ſword fell out of his hand, but he firſt ſo wounded him, that the blood ran through his armour upon the Earth. This ſo vexed the Prieſt, that *he* grew mad with rage, and turned his Horſe upon the *Merchant*, minding to have over-run him; but the *Merchant* obſerving his drift, prepared to receive him, and drawing a long knife, punch'd it into the belly of the horſe, ſo that the Horſe being thus wounded, began to fling and leap; inſomuch, as the Prieſt was in danger to be unhorſt, and ſtriving to ſave himſelf, he loſt his ſhield: the Merchant eſpying him thus unarmed, ran haſtily and caught up the ſhield, and threw it away, ſo that he could no more recover it, that done, he made again towards his Horſe, and ſmote him into the belly with his ſword, which brought the Horſe, and *his* Rider down to the ground. The Prieſt being thus unhorſt, was very nimble to recover himſelf, but the Merchant watching all opportunity, lent him ſuch a blow, that as he began to riſe he laid him flat again upon the ground, and leaping on him, pulled off his Helmet, thinking to have ſmitten off his Head: the *Arch prieſt* ſeeing himſelf in ſuch danger, ſaid thus, Alas! my Friend, I pray thee take pitty on me, and give me leave to confeſs my ſelf, for I yield my ſelf vanquiſh'd: the *Merchant* hereat was very Courteous, and granted him his deſire: the Prieſt had no ſooner got on his feet, but claſping the *Merchant* in his Arms, threw him on the ground, and leapt upon him in moſt ſudden outrage, ſaying thus to the *Merchant*, I have now an advantage, and from my Hands thou ſhalt not eſcape with life, if what I ſhall command thee thou do not effect. *Ah!* replyed the Merchant, haſt thou thus betrayed me? Well, it is ſo now that I ſtand at thy mercy, and that thou maiſt do with me what pleaſeth thee; therefore let me know *what* it is *thou* commandeſt, and ſo *thou* ſave my life, I ſhall gladly do it. *Then thus go with me before the Emperor, and King* Pepin, *and there openly, in the hearing of all men, teſtifie, that thou falſly hath accuſed me, and that there-*

by I may be cleared of those false accusations, which, by thy means, have been brought upon me; all which, if you effectually accomplish, I swear and promise thee to save thy life; and besides, be a means unto the Emperor and his Brother, to buy thee peace, and forgiveness of this thy foul fact, committed both against me and them also: Nay more, I swear to thee, by the faith of a Gentleman; and by the order of Priest-hood, to give thee a Neece of mine in Marriage, who shall be to thee rich, fair, and of a pleasant behaviour, and to conclude, thou shalt say more that ever any of thy Kindred ever told; thou shalt be made more honourable and wealthy. Therefore now advise thy self, whether thou wilt be made happy in an honourable life, or miserable in an untimely death? The Merchant having heard the Arch-priest's tale, was upon the sudden exceeding sorrowful, and not without cause, but not knowing what to resolve upon, he at length thus answered: Sir Priest, your arguments are grounded upon good reasons, therefore I am ready to accomplish your desires, so that you will be as mindful of your oath and promises. In me, quoth the Arch-priest, there shall appear no fault. Why then (quoth the Merchant) let us set forwards to the *Emperor*, and there will I set you free from all those accusations which heretofore I have exhibited against you. It is well, said the *Arch-priest*, *wherefore* rise up then, and let us go together. The *Merchant* had no sooner got on his feet, but he began afresh to open all the treason of the *Arch-priest*, even to his teeth; and again he took courage, and now would requite him in the same sawce he had served him before, and suddenly he clasping the *Arch-priest* in his arms, he threw him down, and having him at advantage, he said thus, *Arch-priest*, seeing you have taught me to play my part, and *therefore* think no more upon confessions; for you shall confess to me or none. The *Arch-priest* seeing himself beaten at his own weapons, began again to intreat, but the Merchant not *regarding* his words, presently put out his Eyes, and gave him so many deadly blows, that he made him sure enough for rising to do him any harm; then the Merchant called the *Marshals* of the field, and said, Lo, here you may see that I have done my best endeavour against the *Arch-priest*, and if he be vanquished, say so, for I am sure I have brought him to such a pass, that I may kill him out-right if I please; *therefore* my request now unto you is. That you would conduct *Alexander Emperor of Constantinople*, and King *Pepin* of *France* hither to this place, accompanied with their worthy Lords and Knights, that they may be Ear-witnesses of the confession, which the *Arch-priest* shall make unto them, and also to hear in what unjust manner he waged combate against me.

The

The *Marſhals* did according to the requeſt of the *Merchant*; and then preſently came the *Emperor*, with King *Pepin*, and all the Nobles, even to the place where the *Arch-prieſt* lay fully vanquiſhed. Then the *Emperor* demanded of him the truth, which the *Arch-prieſt* confeſſed, declaring the whole plot of his villanies, and how by his means the *Empreſs* had been wrongfully baniſhed. When the ſtanders by heard all the whole matter, a multitude of tears were ſhed; but eſpecially the *Emperor*, for his lamentations were ſo violent, that all that were about him wept with great bitterneſs. Now, if the *Emperor were ſo ſorrowful*, what may you think of *King Pepin*, *her Brother*? Alas! it was not without great cauſe, when they ſaw and knew, that by too much truſt given to a *treacherous Prieſt*, they had loſt the vertuous Lady *Belliſant*. Between theſe two great Princes there was great joy, and great *ſorrow*; joy to *King Pepin*, that his Siſter was found innocent and blameleſs; ſorrow to the *Emperor*, that he ſhould be the only means (by falſe ſuggeſtions) of his Wifes baniſhment. At laſt, lamentations were laid apart: when they had heard all the confeſſion of the *Arch-prieſt*'s treaſons, the *Emperor* conſulted with his Counſel, that the *Traytor* ſhould be put into a cauldron of hot burning oyl, quick, and ſo finiſh his miſerable days, as he had traiterouſly ſought the life of that innocent Lady. Execution was ſuddenly to be done; and it being done, the aſſembly of People, of all ſorts was diſmiſſed. Afterwards *King Pepin* withdrew himſelf towards his Lodging; but the *Emperor ſorrowful* for what had hapned, came before *King-Pepin*, and humbling himſelf, began thus to ſay: Alas! dear *Brother*, I am all ſorrowful for my error, in that I have ſo raſhly committed ſuch a deteſtable crime againſt my Lady, your Siſter, and theſe great Nobles your Attendants; Let it ſuffice, that I behold my own folly: What ſhall I ſay? I can but crave pardon for my fault, and give my ſelf into your hand; and do to me whatſoever pleaſeth you. And for a further ſatisfaction, I render up into your hands, my Empire, with all the Regality thereunto appertaining, for I am altogether unworthy to Rule an Empire, that am not Maſter of my own affections. Take it, I ſay, for I will be no longer ſerved; but during the reſt of my life, become a Servant unto thee, or any; for no better have I deſerved. *King Pepin* perceiving the *Emperor* ſo paſſionate, and ſo humble minded, kindly took him from the ground; and before all his Lords, freely forgave him all treſpaſſes. So that before they parted, there was a general Peace concluded; and a ſpeedy courſe taken to ſend into all parts of the World, to ſeek the diſtreſſed Lady *Belliſant*. Thus all things ſettled in order, King *Pepin* prepared to take his leave of the *Emperor*. King *Pepin* having taken

ken his leave of *Constantinople* (as you have heard,) after a long journey arrived in *France*, and so to *Orleance*, to refresh his long and tyred spirits, tossed to and fro in melancholly and heavy cogitations for the woful mischance befallen unto his Sister *Bellisant*. Being thus safely arrived, and seated at *Orleance*, the King was right joyful, that at the last he had attained the place he so much desired, by reason that it was one of the goodliest Forrests in the Realm. Being come hither, he caused great banquets to be made for his welcome; which was accordingly performed. In the midst of these feastings and revelings, the 'Squire that had the Charge of the Orphan *Valantine*, took and presented him before the King, saying, Dread Sovereign, Lo, here I present before you, the poor Orphan, that your Majesty found in the Forrest of *Orleance*, and the same Child which you commanded me to see brought up, not at my own expence, Dread Sovereign, but at your own. My Liege, the reason why I make tender of him unto you at this time is, because he is growing to Man's Estate; and so may it please your Majesty, it is time to dispose of him, as you please. The King having heard the words of the 'Squire, called this Orphan (named *Valentine*) unto him, and took him by the hand, and moved divers questions unto him, all which he answered with much modesty, and great Wisdom; and being ravished therewith, commanded that all his cupboard of Plate should be given unto him: Moreover (said the King) I command, that this Orphan, *Valentine*, be dearly preserved and kept, for that you shall perceive I respect him above common love; I will also, that this Infant shall be nourished, and kept with my Daughter *Eglantine*, she is both fair, wise, and well endowed with all the richest gifts of Nature. The King having given this command, it was accordingly accomplish'd, insomuch, that they were both under government of one and the same Nurse, and had one and the same Attendants: yea, every way they joyed one in the company of the other, in such wise, that if the one was but a little absent from the other, there was a kind of lamentation, till they came together again: but especially the Kings Daughter; who so pondered on the prudent carriages of the Orphan, that she became in love with him; insomuch, that his absence brought her into a thousand fears, and drove her melancholly and disturbed thoughts, into a thousand doubts and jealousies.

Now *Valentine* was ever practising himself in feats of arms; as Horse, Armor, Justs, and Turnaments, still exposing himself to all dangers whatsoever. The King wisely beholding the Inclination of this Youth, allotted unto him what his heart desired, and furnished him with armor, horse, lands, revenues; and made him Lord of rich possessions. Being thus furnished,

nished, there arose within the Court, many secret mutterings, whereby many People fretted so sore in envy toward's him, that they uttered forth many reproachful words against him, saying, That when he was at the best but a found, stray, poor, base Child, without any known Parents or Friends; of no gentle, nor Noble stock, and such like. Which when *Valentine* heard, he could take no other revenge, but set him down and weep: whose tears fair *Eglantine* perceiving, would, in a tender Woman-like affection, accompany him, even pouring forth her tears also for company. At length, when he saw tears little prevailed, he began to forsake them, and taking heart, bore himself like a Man, amongst the greatest in the Court, carrying himself in such humble and gentle frame, that he gained the love of all sorts and degrees, as well Nobles as Inferiours. *Valentine* thus growing up in love of the Court, and all this while his Brother *Orson* runs in the Forrest, all rough, and covered with hair, like a Bear, leading the life of a beast; where we leave him for a while, and return unto the affairs of King *Pepin*: It so chanced, that there came into *Orleance*, divers Ambassadors from the Pope, demanding aid against the *Sarazens*, Enemies of the Holy Faith, who had lately taken the City of *Rome* by violence: King *Pepin* understanding hereof, by divers letters received, addressed himself, and his Powers, to make his resistance against this common Enemy; and amongst the rest of his worthy Followers, he ordained this young *Valentine* a chief Commander. Fair *Eglantine* hearing that *Valentine* should make one, became wondrous heavy and sorrowful; for that she loved him more than any other Creature, and secretly sent a Messenger unto him, to come and speak with her. And when he came, she sighing, said unto him, *Alas!* Valentine, *my Love, now am I quite bereft of all my joy, for I perceive you will betake your self to a dangerous War: Gentle Love, leave me not so desolate; would to the gods, that I had neither Father, nor Friend in the World, to contradict my will, then shouldst thou soon perceive how my Affection stands to thy person: For if wishes might avail: I swear (by the gods) thou art the only Man I would joyn my self unto, in the bands of Marriage; and then should st thou be the King of* France, *and I* Queen. The young man hearing her idle imaginations, said, Madam, leave these Womanish dotages, you know I am not a Person fitting your Estate, I am a found stray, that your Father hath caused long time to be nourished for Charity sake. I am no way fitting you, or the meanest Damosel attending your Person; make your choice else where, and joyn Royal Blood into yours; and so, with all duty, I take my leave, and commend you to the gods. Having thus ended his speech, away he goes,

leaving

leaving the poor Lady all heavy‘ deſolate, and in the midſt of mourning.

By this time the King, and all his retinue, were in a readineſs to depart, and taking their way from *Orleance* towards *Rome*, they went thro' a mighty Forreſt; and being entred, the King called his Lords and Barons together, and ſaid thus unto them: My Lords, it is not unknown to you, that in theſe Woods (as report goeth) there liveth a ſtrange Monſter, a wild-man, much feared of Paſſengers, which ſpectacle of man's ſhape, I long to behold; before I venture out further upon our intended voyage to *Rome*. The Lords generally conſented, and the Chaſe was ſuddenly appointed. Being entred the Wood, they chaſed divers ſorts of wild beaſts, and overcame them: But as for *Orſon*, the Wild-man, none durſt adventure the finding forth of him, ſave only his Brother *Valentine* (but he knew nothing) and he followed ſtill the Chaſe; hoping at laſt, both to find and fight with him alſo. Every way they begirt the Wood, ſome one way, ſome another: The King himſelf ventring ſo far, that he came before a Cave, dark and obſcure, whereas the Wild-man uſed to hide himſelf. *Orſon* perceiving the King, ruſhed out upon him, caught him within his nails (the which was long and crooked) and in rough and ravenous manner, caſt him on the ground. The King thus ſuddenly ſurprized by a Savage, never lookt for life, but in a pittious manner, cryed out for help, who was ſeconded by a valiant Knight at arms, who eſpying the King to be almoſt ſtrangled, ſuddenly drew his Sword to have run the Wild-man through. *Orſon* perceiving the glittering Sword, left the King and ran furiouſly upon the Knight, took him in his arms, and over-threw him, Horſe and all: The horſe ſore affrighted, got up again, and in a mad fit ran up and down the forreſt; but as for the Rider (though a Knight at arms) *Orſon* held him ſo faſt with his twangs and talons, that at laſt he pulled him in pieces. In the mean ſpace the King eſcaped, and meeting part of his company, related to them the great danger he had eſcaped, and the fearful death of the Knight. Theſe tydings much amazed the reſt of the company; yet being manfully reſolved, they joyned themſelves together, and marched towards the cave, to meet with *Orſon*, and either to take him alive, or put him to death in the cave. But being come thither, they found the Knight dead, and torn in pieces, but *Orſon* they could not find, for the gods had reſerved him to be conquered only by his Brother *Valentine*; of whoſe proceedings you ſhall hear more hereafter.

So the King perceiving their labour loſt, gave over the chaſe, and ſet forward towards *Rome*. After this, the King ranked his Forces into battel-

ray,

ray, and the great enſign of *France* was given to one, called *Myllon Dangler*, a very valiant Prince, and a wiſe Leader, ſo that he and his two Bretheren, *Gervas*, and *Sampſon*, had the whole Command of the Forces; that then were marching towards *Rome*. When they were come unto *Rome*, King *Pepin* deſired Battle, and would fain underſtand the ſtate that the City now ſtood in, under the Conqueſt of the *Sarazens*; but it was told him, he ſhould not be too inquiſitive of thoſe affairs; for the Admiral of the Sarazens had ſurprized the City, and put multitudes to the ſword, and had ſpoiled and defeated all the Churches, and made them Temples fit for their Heatheniſh Idols; and he conſtrained the Pope, with his Cardinals, Arch-Biſhops, Biſhops, Priors, Monks, Friers, and all the Eccleſiaſtical Perſons, for, to ſerve at their Heatheniſh Alters, and to ſacrifice to their Devils, after the cuſtom of the Heathens. When King *Pepin* underſtood hereof, he was much enraged, to hear that the Chriſtians were thus captivated by Heathens; wherefore he advanced himſelf nearer to the city, and there having aſſembled all his Forces, he began to draw them into divers Squardrons, meaning thereby to give them a ſudden aſſault; for his Fury was ſo great againſt theſe Heatheniſh Sarazens that he vowed revenge upon them; but taking better advice, he reſerved himſelf, and his Army for a ſeaſon. What after befel, ſhall be delivered at large, when fit occaſion ſerveth our purpoſe.

Chap. VII. *How King* Pepin *beſieged* Rome; *and how* Valentine *Juſted with the Admiral of the Sarazens, and ſlew him, whereby the City was relieved, and won again from the Sarazens.*

KIng *Pepin* being thus come to *Rome*, beſieged it, and after ſome days ſpent, he called about him his Barons, Knights, and mighty Men of War, and began to ſpeak unto them in this manner: My Lords, and followers, you well know that this heatheniſh Admiral, Enemy to the Chriſtian Faith, and Church of *Rome*, hath put many Chriſtians to the ſword, and violently troden under foot, all ſuch as withſtood his power; therefore it is our duties to commiſerate their Eſtate that are thus overthrown, and to try the fortune of a battle, amongſt thoſe heatheniſh Pagans; and either drive them out of the City, or leave our dead carcaſſes as a prey, as many have done before: Wherefore, I King *Pepin*, reſting upon this reſolution, would fain find out a Man, to bear unto the proud Admiral a Letter of defiance in my Name. King *Pepin* having finiſhed his ſpeech, there was none amongſt them made any anſwer. At length, *Valentine*, ſeeing all ſtand mute, ſtep-

ped before the King, and began to speak on this manner: Mighty Sovereign, so you be pleased to give me leave, I shall undertake the message, and shall no whit fear to speak, both to the Pagan Admiral, & to the whole Host of Pagans, were their multitude twice as many as they be, and my return shall make proof, that I have done my message, both with honour, and advantage to your Majesty. The King hearing *Valentine* thus forward, and of such undonted, and Valiant resolution, was right joyful; & all those of his Princely train, greatly marvelled at this his magnanimous spirit. Hereupon the King called forth unto him a Secretary, willing him to draw a Letter of Defiance, and deliver the same to *Valentine*. *Valentine* prepared himself thereunto, and no sooner had he received the letter, but he took his leave of the King, and all his train, and being bravely mounted, he took his way towards *Rome*, and so to the Palace where the Admiral lay: So coming thither, he came before the Admiral, and saluted him after this manner: The gods preserve the Noble and Puissant *King Pepin*, my Lord and Soveraign; and *Mahomet* whom thou servest save and defend thee, Redouted Admiral. When *Valentine* had thus spoken, the Admiral rouzed him from his chair, and with fierce and frowning brow, replied thus unto him: Messenger, return, and get thee gone out of my sight; and say thus unto King *Pepin*, Will him either to Renounce his Faith, and believe on *Mahomet*, or else let him look to receive no other sentance than death; and so destroy him, together with all his Lords and Kingdom: get thee gone, and make here no longer abode; go, I say, reply not a Word, for my heart is all enraged, that so long I suffer thee. Again, I tell thee, that for thy part, thou hast committed a haughty enterprize, thus to enter my Palace, to deliver any such message unto me. Wherefore I assure thee, by the height of my Majesty, if that I did assuredly know, that what thou hast done, were through pride of heart and insolency, thereby to make a mock at our *Majesty*, thou shouldest never *return* to *King Pepin*. to carry an answer to thy proud *Masters Letters*.

Valentine hearing these furious words sounding from the Admiral, began to be afraid: Wherefore deliberating with himself what to reply, he mildly said, High and mighty *Emperor*, do not imagine that by pride I am come before you; for when you shall understand the manner of my coming, you will be astonished thereat. Why then (*quoth the Admiral*) speak on, tell us how thou art come, for *I* swear by *Mahomet*, *I* shall take great pleasure in hearing thee relate thine enterprize. Then said *Valentine*, Sir, so it is, that *I* was accused to *King Pepin* for a Coward, and that since *I* came to this War, *I* would secretly have stolen away from the Camp

and returned again into *France*: For which (great Admiral) the *King* had me in great disgrace, & vowed the next morning to smite off my head. perceiving my self in this danger, sought rather to save my life, than to lose my life and honour; and therefore gave it forth throughout the Court, that I would undertake to come unto your Court, to defie you on the *King*'s behalf, and therewithal, that I would challenge you, to break three spears with you in single combate, to try your valiancy, and to win my lost honour that I told unto you: Wherefore my request is, that your Greatness would grant me my Request, otherwise *I* dare not return again, lest the *King* put me to Death. The Admiral hearing this pittiful tale of *Valentine*, said unto him, Son, *I* do swear by *Mahomet*, that thou shalt not be refused, but at this instant *I* offer thee the Justs; and to the end that those French-men that lye in siege before the City, may have a sight thereof, *I* will ordain the place of Justing to be without the City. *Valentine* Humbly thanked him, and in token of *his* acceptance, and feigned love, he fell down, and kissed the Feet of the Admiral. *Valentine* grew into great favour in the Admiral's Court; but yet it often troubled his mind, that he could not know who were his Parents. But while he bestowed *his* wandring *thoughts* here, the Admiral said *thus* unto *him*: Fair Son, methinks you are very pensive; 'tis true (*quoth he*) and not *without* cause, for *I* am afraid *that* I shall be slain in these Justs; whereofre my request is, *That I* may have a Confessor, to give me absolution for my sins. Then the Admiral commanded *that a Priest* should be *brought him*: The Priest being come, said unto *Valentine*, Now Confess you unto me; *Valentine* getting the Priest aside, he said *thus* unto *him*: *Sir*, you are a *Christian Priest*, and you *ought* most to defend the *Christian-Faith*, wherefore hearken to *that I* shall tell you. for it is a *thing* requireth great secresie. *Thus* it is, you know *that this day I* am to Just, *with* the heathenish Admiral, the greatest Enemy of *Christian* People: Now *I* am well assured, that a great number of *the* Sarazens will issue forth of the City. to be Eye-witnesses of these Justs, to be held without the City. Therefore you shall give warning to all *Christians*, to keep within the walls, arming themselves in a readiness, and Closely keep it from the ears of the Pagans; so when the Pagans are come forth to behold the Justs, the *Christians* suddenly shall surprise the Guards *that* keeps the Gates; and if any mutiny arise, let them keep out those that are out. And send a messenger to *King Pepin* of what is done, *that* he with *his* Army, may come unto them *that* are *without*, *while* those *within* are set on by *the* Armed *Christians*; so begirting *them* on every side, that in the end we may make such a slaughter

of them, that the Christians may receive both their City in Peace, and their former liberty. So having ended his speech, the Priest departed. The Admiral commanded *Valentine* to be led into his Chamber to dine, giving them charge he should be honourably attended at the board. Being set among many Lords, he behaved himself gently and mildly towards all. Dinner being done, the Admiral called unto him a Nephew of his, named *Salatas*, commanding him to see *Valentine* as well armed at all points as himself; and more-over, charged his Nephew to deliver unto *Valentine* the best horse in his Stable. *Salatas* having received this command from his Uncle the Admiral, took *Valentine*, and led him into a fair hall; being come thither, he caused to be laid before him divers armors, willing him to make choice of the best. *Valentine* cast his Eyes upon them all, and at last appointed the armor, wherewith he should be armed, and making himself ready as fast as he could, he approached down into the Court, whereas he was attended with his horse, ready to put his foot into the stirrop. Being come down out of the hall, he presently mounted his horse; the Admiral issuing likewise ready armed, out of his privy Palace. Being thus armed, they took their way towards the chief Gate of the City of *Rome*, for on that side King *Pepin* had laid his Siege. When they were both in the Field, *Valentine* hung his shield about his Neck, in which he wore a heart, waving in a field of silver, and on one side a tree; all which did signifie that he was found in a Forrest, and were the same Arms King *Pepin* bestowed on him. The Champions being entred the lists, great was the clamour of the *French*, in joy of *Valentine*; the sound whereof, the Pagans hearing, suddenly issued out of the City, to behold these Triumphant Justs.

The Fryar having plaid his part among the Christians, within the City, presently after the Pagans were gone out to behold these triumphs, addressed themselves to take possession of the Gates; which having gotten, there was entrance again to be expected. King *Pepin* being acquainted with their purpose, prepared all his Men of War ready to relieve *Valentine*, if necessity required. Having all things in readiness, the hour was at hand that the Justs should begin. So each of them being prepared for the encounter, they valiantly couched their Spears, and the first course proved so valiant, that their Spears shivered all in splinters; each combatant perceiving valour to brandish on the top of his helm, made out a second course, where *Valentine* got the better; for with his spear (charged against the Admiral) he gave him such a blow, that he forced his spear quite through his body: insomuch that he fell from his Horse stark dead, making a pittiful noise at his departure; wherefore the Pagans ran at *Valentine*, and would have killed him. *Valentine*

lentine perceiving their intent, with a resolute courage, put spurs to his horse, & with his sword drawn, violently rushed through the thickest of the Pagans, and slew many of them, as he passed. King *Pepin* with his Host, came up to the aid of *Valentine*, but he was so beset by the Pagans, that he was smiten off his Horse; which *Valentine* espying, came up to the rescue of the *King*, so that he horsed him again. The King perceiving himself delivered out of danger, called unto *Valentine*, and said, my Child thou hast saved my life, which if the gods grant to spare, I will reward thee liberally. By this time the Battle grew so hot, that the Pagans were forced to retire to the City; when they came to the Gates, the Christians that were in the City issued on them, and placed the Ensigns and Standards of *King Pepin* on the Walls. The Pagans seeing *King Pepin*'s Colours displayed on the Walls, betook themselves to flight: In chase of them the Christians followed so fast, that they shamefully ended their days. In this Battle were slain a thousand Pagans, only by the means of *Valentine*, who bare himself so valiantly that day. Thus by his Prowess, the City was again restored to the Christians; for which deed there was Great Triumph in all Christendom, but especially at *Rome*: So that all the Inhabitants round about, gave immortal praise to *Pepin King of France*, and by the general applause of the People, he was created Emperor, and crowned by the Pope. *King Pepin* did many goodly acts in his time, administring Justice to all. This happened in the time of Pope *Clemens* the Fourth.

Chap. VII. *How* Hausray *and* Henry *repined at the love the King did shew towards* Valentine.

KIng *Pepin* having expelled the Pagans out of *Rome*, he took his way back towards *Orleance*; and being there arrived, he was joyfully welcomed by *Bertha* his Queen, and her little Son *Charlemain*, and her fair Daughter *Eglantine*; and their joy appeared so much the more, for that *Valentine*, who accordingly came unto her; and when she saw him, she saluted him kindly, and with an amorous Countenance, begun thus unto him: *Valentine*, you above all the rest, are most welcome; and well ought it so to be, for Fame hath blown forth her trumpet of your Triumphs; and Report says, you are the only Champion that drove the Pagans out of *Rome*. *Valentine* replyed, Madam, I can hinder no man to speak what pleaseth him; but as for my self, I have done little deserving praise; but it hath pleased the *King*, your Father, to do me that Great Honour, even so much, as all the days of my Life I am not able to make the least part of Recompence. And as he

spake

spake these words, *Haufray* and *Henry* (two men composed of all envy) entred the Chamber of *Eglantine*; and seeing him, began thus to speak: Valentine, *What have you to do here, in the Chamber of our Sister? It is no place for such Straglers as you are; this your boldness is not to be born; no man knows of whom you are, therefore we advise you to be warned, that you attempt not the like again, lest you dearly buy these your presumptions. Valentine* hearing these words, answered, *Wrong me not, for I entred not the Chamber of your Sister, to her dishonour. What though I be poor, and not know of whence I am, yet I am not so base as to offer violence unto one, descended from the blood of Kings: And further, I promise and vow never to come near her Chamber again*: and therewithal departed, leaving the Lady very pensive all alone. *Valentine* hasted to the Palace, to wait upon the *King* at Dinner, where was in presence *Haufry* and *Henry*, and the Duke of *Myllain Daugler*, who likewise waited upon the *King*, during dinner-time. Dinner being finished, the *King* arose, and called to *Valentine*, and in hearing of all his Nobles, began thus to say: *My Lords, here is* Valentine, *that hath well deserved at our hands, and that saved my Life when I was in danger; therefore to the end you may take knowledge of his good service towards me, I* freely *give him the Earldom of* Clerimont *of* Averne; *and when I can bestow more upon him,* he *shall not* be *forgotten. Valentine* gave him many thanks, saying, That he had heaped upon him more Honours than he could any ways deserve. *Haufray* and *Henry* hearing these words, grew greatly malecontent; and at last *Henry* began to talk with his Brother after this manner. This found-fellow I perceive grows in great favour with the *King*, and there must be some course taken to crose his Designs, or else our overthrow will shortly folly upon it: For (quoth he) you know well, that the *King* hath no Sons but we two, and one lsttle one (named *Charlemain*) which if our Father dye, may by our furtherance quickly be set beside the *Kingdom*. Again, it is greatly to be feared, that this *Valentine* will support and uphold him against us: Therefore Brother, I think it good to frame some plot against him, to bring him in displeasure with the *King*, and so far to prosecute your revenge against him, that if it be possible, we will not only work his downfal, but life and all: this being effected, we may at our pleasure govern the Realm without contradiction. He having ended his speech. *Haufray* replyed, Let it be as thou hast said, & that we may entrap his life, this shall be our plot: We will both go to the *King*, and tell him, that this Upstart *hath* deflowred our Sister, and *that* we took *him* in Bed with her; *which*, when the *King* heareth, will certainly put him

to

to Death. Being thus resolved, they daily fed their imaginations with the death of *Valentine*; while he (nothing mistrusting) served the King daily in all duty, insomuch, that the King's love daily increased towards him, and above all other most desire his Company.

Here let us leave off a little, and come to *Orson*, his *Brother*, who all this while lived in the *Forrest*, so much feared of all men, that none *durst approach* nigh the Wood: Daily complaints came unto the King *from* every side; and amongst the rest it chanced one day, that a poor man came unto the King all wounded, saying thus unto him: *Sir, I am come before you to make complaint against a Wild-man in the Woods, for one day, as I and my Wife passed through the Forest, carrying bread and other victuals. the Wild-man came upon us, took it away, and eat it every bit: and more than that, he violently took my Wife from me, and constrained her to yield unto his lawless lust.* The *King* hearing out the poor man's tale, was disposed to make himself merry with his ill fortune, and therefore asked the poor Man this question, Whether grieved him most, either taking away his victuals, or his Wife? By my faith said the poor man, at the wrong offered to my Wife. Thou hast rightly said; (*quoth the King*) therefore *I* command my Treasurer to see restitution made unto thee for the loss of thy victuals; but as for thy Wife, thou must bear the burthen thereof thy self. After this, the *King* caused all his Barons to assemble, and make some order to take *Orson*; all which they did; And hereupon a Proclamation was sent unto all parts of the Realm, that whosoever he was, that could take this Wild-man alive or dead, should have a thousand marks for his reward. Hereupon assembled many worthy *Knights* to take this task in hand; but the *King* being one day in his Palace in the midst of his Nobles, talking and debating who should be appointed to this business, *Haufray*, Enemy unto *Valentine*, being there, said thus unto the *King*: Sir, here is *Valentine*, whom you have nourished, and advanced to high dignities, and one that hath offered unlawful love to our Sister *Eglantine*: He is fittest to set forward to try his valour, and let him be imployed to fetch in this Wild-man, that is such a terror to the inhabitants: And if with his valour he can vanquish him, then let him have *Eglantine* in *Marriage*, which is his desired wish. The *King* hearing these words of his Son, said, Away for thy Speech savoureth of nothing but envy. What though he be poor, of low birth, and found in a Forrest; yet *I* find him to me true and trusty, and of gentle carriage; and to me seemeth to be born of more noble Parentage than thou *art*: Leave off these thy malicious and bitter speeches against him; for the behaviour that dwelleth in him, shews that he is descended

cended of more noble Lineage, than as yet to us appeareth, And I, for my part (for the divers vertues that are daily seen in him) am willing that he go to my Daughter when ever he please, for I am well assured, that no dishonour can be offered out of a branch of such a generous Spirit.

Haufray hearing the King make this apology on the behalf of *Valentine*, was sore displeased in heart; but setting a good face upon the matter, dissembles his countenance for that time; but it seemed *Valentine* well observed him, and at last brake forth into these words: *Haufray*, whithout any cause given on my part, you have spoken ill of me, and your will it is, that I should undertake the fight and conquest of the Wild-man, only to this end, that I might end my days, and so your revenge be accomplished upon me: Well, be it so, here before the King, I take a solemn oath, that I will take the enterprize upon me, and find out the Wild-man; and having found him, I will fight him, and either bring him alive or dead, or else leave my dead Carcass as a witness in the open field. But if I conquer and live, I will never more be seen in this Country, till I have found the Father that begot me; as also, bring to light whether I was lawfully begotten in wedlock, and how I came to be left an Infant in the Wood. The King understanding well what danger *Valentine* had plung'd himself into, grew exceeding angry against his two Sons, cursing them, for that they were the cause of this enterprize; for he loved *Valentine* more than any, and at last called unto *Valentine*, and said, My Child, advise you well what you undertake, for to fight with the Wild-man, is desparation it self; for you cannot be ignorant how many valiant men, and worthy Champions have by him been overcome: And others likewise of valiant account, that hath forsaken this combate: Therefore, I say, let not the evil words of a few malicious Men make you desperate, in losing your life. For my child, it is far better to endure all the bitter words of envy (which is accounted vertue) than to hazard ones life against such a monster and no Man. *Valentine* replyed Pardon me my Leige, for *I* will never revoke my intended purpose: They call me found-brat, which grieveth my very soul, for indeed I know not what I am, nor of what place; but I rest determined, and so take my leave; for to morrow morning will I set forward to my intended enterprize. Having taken his leave, marvel not, tho' the fair Lady *Eglantine* made great lamentation for what had hapned; but the next morning, by brake of day, she called one of her Maidens, and said, Go to *Valentine*, and bid him come and speak with me before his departure; bid him fear no danger of life, for I would fain take my leave of him. The Damsel did as the Lady commanded; and when she came to *Valentine*, she found him mounted on horse-

horse back, and she did her message unto him. He understanding her errand, said unto her, Damsel, I know the love to be great between the Lady *Eglantine* and me, yet I would not wish her to desire that that will turn to her dishonour: But envy is of so great power, that it never leaves them whom it once possesseth. For certain it is, that *Haufray* and *Henry* (brethren to your Lady) have at me great and malicious hearts, and will pursue me, even unto death, if it were possible; wherefore, fair Damsel, bear her this answer, which you heard me tell, and bid her think no evil thereof; and further, that she hold me in excuse, that I refuse to come; and so farewell.

Chap. IX. *How* Valentine *Conquered his Brother* Orson *(the Wild-man in the Forrest of* Orleance*) and afterwards departed from the Forrest, with* Orson, *towards* Orleance, *wherein King* Pepin *was resident.*

NOW is *Valentine* upon his journey, accompanied only with his Page; whither being come, he put his helmet on his head, and sent him back again: So he rode forth all that day, seeking the Wild-man, but he could not find him; so the night drawing on, he descended from his horse, and tyed him up to a tree; having so done, he refreshed his body with such victuals as he had; and when he had eaten, and the day shut in, he for fear, betook himself to the top of a tree, and there abode all that night. In the morning, as soon as day appeared, he looked round about, and at last espied his Brother *Orson* running through the Forrest, at length the Wild-man came to the place where *Valentine* had tyed his horse, who much wondring at the beauty of him, began to claw him with his long nails, thinking thereby to rouze up the courage of the Horse; for he had never seen the like. The horse feeling the Wild-man's nails, began to fling and kick exceedingly. *Valentine* setting on the top of a tree, noted the terrible shape of the Wild-man, and began to be afraid; but calling on the gods, he requested their aid against this Monster. *Orson* all this while was still busied in beholding the horse; and still offered him such injury with his nails, that the horse did nothing but kick and bite him: When *Orson* perceived the horse to be to hard for him, he caught fast hold on him, and thought to have over-thrown him: *Valentine* perceiving his horse in danger to be slain, he cryed out aloud, and said, Wild-man, leave my horse, and stay till I come down, and with me thou shalt have fighting enough. The Wild-man hearing a strange voice, looked up into the tree, and espying there a man, made unto him divers signs, with his hands and head, to come down,

and he would pull him in pieces. *Valentine* making all the haſt he could, drew his ſword, and leap'd upon the ground cloſe by the Wild-man; when *Orſon* ſaw the ſword, and that he offered to ſmite him therewith, he leaped back, and kept himſelf from the ſtroak; but ſuddenly returned again upon *Valentine*, and threw him unto the Ground: Herewithal *Valentine* was very much diſcomfitted, for he looked for no other than preſent death in the place; for he felt the ſtrength of the Wild-man ſo great, that he had no hope of eſcaping. Being thus both grovelling on the Ground, *Valentine* aſſay'd divers times to have gotten *Orſon* under him, but could not; when he ſaw, that by ſtrength, there was no hope to overcome him, he drew out a ſharp pointed Knife, and ſmote *Orſon* into one of his ſides, that the blood iſſued out abundantly; *Orſon* feelling himſelf wounded, all inraged, gave ſuch a ſhrick, that the woods ecchoed again at the ſound thereof; but yet recovering himſelf, he ſo fiercely aſſaulted *Valentine*, with his ſharp nails, that he got him at ſuch an advantage, that he threw him once more upon the Earth, where lying, they fought ſo long together, that it were too tedious here to utter. At laſt *Orſon* took the ſhield from about the neck of *Valentine*, and having got it, he beheld it right ſtrangely, in regard of the divers colours therein emblazed: When he had looked his fill, he caſt it againſt the ground, and ſuddenly returned again to *Valentine*, and with the violence of his nails and teeth, he brake in pieces both the ribs of his Armour, and his havorgeon alſo, ſmiting and beating him ſo ſharply, with his nails, that he made the blood follow in all places whereon he laid hold: *Valentine* feeling himſelf ſore wounded, after ſome oriſons uſed to the gods, he made again upon *Orſon* with his ſword, thinking to have ſmitten him; but *Orſon* recoyling back, ſtep'd unto a tree hard by, which he pulled up, & made thereof a Club; being thus prepared, he made againſt *Valentine*, and ſtriking at him, he gave him ſuch a blow, that he made him fall upon one knee; *Valentine* recovering again, laid about him ſo fiercely, that there began again another dangerous fight between the two Brethren, not knowing they were ſo, nor the cauſe of this their fortunes. *Orſon* was ſo cruel and ſtrong, that he could oftentimes have killed *Valentine*, had it not been for his ſword; for he was ſore afraid thereof, by reaſon he had received a wound before by a knife; long time they fought together, inſomuch, as they both grew faint: In which tiredneſs, both ſtanding gaping upon each other; *Valentine* looked wiſtly upon *Orſon*, and ſaid thus: Wild-man, wherefore doſt thou not yield thy ſelf unto me? here thou liveſt like a beaſt, having no knowledge of humane ſociety; come thy way with me, and I ſhall make thee know thy ſelf, and others; I will give thee Food of all

ſorts

sorts, and also cloath thee in apparel fitting Human shape. *Orson* understanding by signs he meant his good, fell down upon his knees, and stretched forth his hands towards his Brother, making signs unto him, to forgive him, and he would commit himself under his command; and with further signs promised, that, during his life, he would assist him both in body and goods. This happening thus, it was great joy to *Valentine*, in that he had conquered the Wild-man, which so many *Knights* durst not meddle withal; for by this only he had won himself more honour, than any *Knight* that lived in *France*. All this hard adventure now knitting up in this manner, he took *Orson* by the Hand, and shewed him by signs, that he should go on before him, till they were out of the Wood, for he would not trust him behind; and being out of the Wood, *Valentine* took off one of his Girts, and bound both his Hands fast unto his Body, that he should not attempt again to do him any hurt; and in this manner, being bound, he mounted on Horse-back, and led the Wild-man after him, like a beast, who never resisted; which was a thing most of all to be wondred at.

Valentine took his way towards *Orleance*; but you must imagine he could not reach there in one day, therefore he determin'd to lodge at the next town or village; being come thither, he thought there to take his rest that night, but the Inhabitants perceiving the Wild Man, every Man ran into his House, shutting up their doors; and for fear, durst not offer once to look out on him; *Valentine* perceiving them full of fear, cryed out unto them, saying, *Open your doors every Man, and fear not, for we are come only for Lodging*; yet for all this, they would not give him succour. At last, seeing neither intreaty or threatning would prevail, he swore most bitterly, *that if they would not receive him into their houses, to rest there that Night, he would loose the Wild-man amongst them*; still he proceeded to intreat for Lodging, but none would give it him. At last, as he had threatned so he did; and letting loose the Wild-man, he made *him* signs *how he* should run against *such* a Gate, *which* was an Inn, *the which he* did; and wringing a post from out of the *Earth*, *he therewithal* flung them open, *with such* violence, *that they* fell off the Hooks upon the Ground. *Valentine* seeing the Gate opened in *this* manner, entred the House, and the Wild-man *with him*: But when they within saw the Gate broaken down, all forsook the House, and ran out at the back door, leaving all to *Valentine*, and *his* beastly Guest: *Valentine* perceiving them all fled, went to the Stable, and set up *his* Horse, and dressed *him*; and *Orson* in the mean time went into the kitchin, where there was Capons, and divers other provisions of flesh, upon a spit roasting at *the* fire. *Valentine* made signs to *Orson*, *that*

he ſhould turn the ſpit; but as ſoon as *Orſon* underſtood the meaning, he ſet his horny tallons upon the meat, and tore it from the ſpit, devouring it as greedily as a ravenous Wolf; when he had torn the meat in pieces, he eſpyed a cauldron of Water ſtanding by, into which he put his head like a horſe, and drank water unmeaſurably. *Valentine* perceiving him to be a-thirſt, made ſigns unto him, that he ſhould forſake the water, & he would give him wine; and therewithal took a pot, and led him into the Cellar; when *Valentine* had drawn the pot full, he gave it unto *Orſon*, who ſet it to his mouth, and taſting the liquor, found it to be very good, drinking ſo freely thereof, that he drank out all the wine, and afterward threw the pot againſt the Ground, making a ſign for more: *Valentine* fulfilled his ſigns, and filled him the pot again; but *Orſon* eſpying a little bowl diſh, he put the wine into it, and carried it into the Stable to *Valentine*'s horſe; but *Valentine* perceiving that, made ſigns unto him, that his horſe drank nothing but water; yet *Orſon* ſhewed again by ſigns, that wine was a great deal better than water. Many other accidents happened while they were in the houſe, which here we will paſs over; for the night was ſo far ſpent, that Reſt were fitter for them, than Meat. *Valentine* haſtned him to ſupper, making *Orſon* to bear him company (after his kind) but *Orſon* drank ſo freely of the wine that *Valentine* gave him, that he became drunk; and in the end got him to the fire, and fell faſt aſleep. *Valentine* ſeeing what had happened, ſaid, Now do I perceive there is neither any ſtrength, nor reſiſtance in this Wild-man; for if I would, I could ſuddenly here end his days: But in regard he would make further tryal of him, he punched againſt him with his foot ſo hard, that it awaked him: Being awaked, he made ſigns unto him, that there was People about the houſe: with that *Orſon* ſuddenly roſe as in a trance, and catching up a great log within the chimney, he ran againſt the Gate of the Houſe, that he made all ſhake again; at which ſudden action, *Valentine* fell into a great laughter; which *Orſon* perceiving, let all alone, and betook himſelf to reſt again: *Valentine* made unto him another ſign, that he ſhould fear nothing, for he would be his watch-man; but *Orſon* would not ſleep again, but with the log in his arms: And *Valentine* did as he had promiſed unto *Orſon*, and watched all that night, fearing the Inhabitants, leſt that they ſhould grow into an uproar: for they were ſo greatly poſſeſſed with fear, that they forſook their Houſes, and ran every one to the Church, and all that night ſo tumbled the Bells backward, that e're the morning came, all the Village was filled with Men of VVar. Now the morning being come, *Valentine* betook him to his horſe, leading *Orſon* bound (as he did the day before) towards *Orleance*, and the next

day

day came to the City: The Inhabitants of the City perceiving the Wild-man, ran every one into his houſe, ſhutting their *Doors*, and getting up into their higheſt rooms, gazed out of their windows. Being entred the City, tydings came to King *Pepin*, that *Valentine* had conquered the Wild-man: The King hearing thereof, was greatly aſtonied, and at laſt ſaid *of Valentine*, my Child in a happy hour waſt thou born, bleſſed be the Father that got thee, and the Mother that was delivered of thee in the *Wood*, for now I ſee thou art fortunate, and by thee are we delivered of our fears. *Valentine* rode thro' the City *of Orleance*, till he came at the Pallace gate *of* the King; and when the *Porter* ſaw *Orſon*, he ſhut the gates upon them, till *Valentine*, with a loud voice, ſaid, Fear not but go and tell the King that I will ſhield him, and all his Court from the Fury of this Wild-man; for I have made him ſo tame, that he will *not* hurt any One. The *Porter* went and told the King what *Valentine* ſaid, who commanded they ſhould enter the Palace. Then *Valentine* took *Orſon* by the hand, and led him into the Court. When *Bertha*, and the fair *Eglantine* heard that the Wild-man was come, they *got* them *to* their Chambers for fear, *Valentine* went up into the great Hall, where the King ſat, accompanied with his Nobles, kindly welcoming him home: Amongſt the reſt ſtood *Hauſray* and *Henry*, who alſo made great ſhew *of* love, but in heart wiſhed the Wild-man had been his death. King *Pepin*, and the reſt of the *Lords* gazed *on* the Wild man, inſomuch, as the King ſaid, He is made *of* a proper mould, fair *of* ſtature; and though now he ſeem rough, yet if he were cloathed, he would become the ſhape of a right worthy Knight. Then *Valentine* ſaid, My Liege, it were requiſite he were baptized. It pleaſeth me well (ſaid the King) let it be done: So the Prieſt was appointed *to* Baptize him; theſe were his *God-fathers*, King *Pepin*, the Duke *of Millain*, and *Valentine*; and the Dutcheſs *of Bourbon* his *God-Mother*: So they call'd his Name *Orſon*: The Baptiſm being ſolemnized, the King ſat him down *to* dinner, and *Valentine* waited *on* his Cup. Then *Orſon* was commanded in the Hall to ſee his behaviour; and being come, the King beheld him earneſtly. *Orſon* ſeeing the meat, *took* as much as he could graſp in his hand, and devoured it; having eaten that, he eſpyed one of the Attendants carrying a Peacock to the table, who coming near unto him, he ſnatched it, and ſat him down and devoured it. *Valentine* ſeeing his behaviour, made ſigns *unto* him, that he did *not* well; whereat *Orſon* ſeemed aſhamed; but the King bad him let him alone, for he much delighted in his rudeneſs. *Orſon* having devoured much meet, got a pot *of* Wine, and drank it *off*, throwing the *pot to* the Ground. Night being come, *Valen-*

tine

tine and *Orſon* was appointed to a fair Chamber and Bed; but as ſoon as *Orſon* entered, he laid him down on the Ground, and ſo fell aſleep.

Chap. X. *How* Haufray *and* Henry *took Counſel together, to Murther* Valentine, *in the Chamber of* Eglantine. *And how Duke* Savary *ſent unto King* Pepin, *for aid againſt the* Green-knight, *who would have his Daughter in Marriage againſt his Will.*

Right glad and joyful was the fair Lady *Eglantine*, that *Valentine* had conquered the Wild-man, inſomuch that ſhe ſent him word to bring the Wild-man into her preſence. Then *Valentine* took *Orſon* by the hand, and led him to *Eglantine*, where were aſſembled divers Ladies of honour to behold him; *Orſon* being in the Chamber, in a laughing humour leapt upon the Bed, there making divers ſigns unto the Ladies, which pleaſed them, but his meaning they could not underſtand; at which they were right ſorry. At laſt *Valentine* opened to them his meaning; which was, that he would gladly kiſs and play with ſome of them, whereat they looked at one another, and began to laugh. While this aſſembly of the Ladies chanced in the Chamber of *Eglantine*, *Haufray* came to *Henry*, and ſaid thus unto him: Brother, you ſee how the honour and credit of this Foundling encreaſeth, which much eclipſeth ours, and we muſt ſeek ſome remedy for it. It is true (*ſaid* Henry) wherefore let us lay ſome plot to cut him off. Then ſaid *Haufray*, hearken to what I ſhall ſay, *Valentine* is now with our Siſter, and we may have fit occaſion to kill him in her Chamber: When he have done, we will inform the *King*, that we found him in her Bed. According to their determination they put it into action, and ruſhed into the Chamber of *Eglantine*: As ſoon as *Haufray* was entered, he roughly thus began with *Valentine*: Diſloyal Man, now ſhalt thou know the price of thy inconſtancy, purchaſing daily great diſhonour unto the *King* our Father, by abuſing our Siſter, and leading her Affections to work your pleaſure on her; inſomuch, as by thee ſhe is made unfortunate: But ſith the *King* hath been told thereof, and he regarded not our complaint, it is therefore high time to take vengeance of thee in our own Perſons. And *Haufray* liſt up his fiſt, and calling him Traytor, ſmote *Valentine* on the Face, ſo that the Blood ran out of his mouth. *Henry*, on the other ſide, came to him, and with a Glaive, thought to have ſmitten *Valentine* to the Earth; but *Orſon* perceiving they were in earneſt, leapt out, and gave *Haufray* ſuch a ſtroak with his rough hand, that he felled him; and after ran to *Henry*, and Girded him ſo between his arms, that, if the Ladies

had

had not been in presence to have appeased his wrath, he had destroyed them both. This caused an out-cry in the Chamber, whereat came all the Barons of the Court, to know the cause of this sudden clamour; but when they understood that *Orson* had dealt so violently with the King's Sons, they would have killed him with their swords: *Valentine* perceiving their fury to arise, drew his sword, and swore, That if any of them offered violence to *Orson*, he would run them thorow; this said, he made a sign to him to be still, and so rested himself for that time. *Haufray* and *Henry* went to their Father, making unto him great complaint against *Valentine*, and the Wild-man, saying, Father, in an ill hour was this *Valentine* born, for he hath brought hither the Wild-man, only to work our overthrow; & if you put him not to death, he will shortly do the like against your Royal Person. The King hearing this complaint, was exceeding sorry, and gave them this answer: That as for *Orson*, he would have him put into a strong Tower, where he should be safely kept, and not come abroad without leave given him; and as for *Valentine*, the King sent for him, to demand the cause of this disorder. *Valentine* being come before the King, began to say on this manner: Dread Soveraign, I was in the Chamber of your Daughter *Eglantine*, accompanied with divers other Ladies, that desired to see *Orson*: I know not how, nor why, your two Sons violently entred, charging me, that i had abused the body of your fair Daughter. Moreover, in the heat of their violence used against me, *Haufray* smote me on the face, that the blood issued out of my mouth; and *Henry* lifting up a Glave, thought to have taken away my life. All which, when *Orson* saw, he suddenly made towards them, and smote them both to the Earth, and therewithal began this uproar. The King hearing this Tale, said, And is this true that you have said? Upon my life (*said* Valentine) all that I have spoken is true. Then said the King, *Orson* hath done nothing but right, and that which in duty he ought to do. And as for you *Haufray* and *Henry* I see very well, that you are even swollen full of mallice against *Valentine*; wherefore I charge you from henceforth, that you attempt no ill against him; for here I vow, that I would not lose him for the best Baron in my Land, for i have made many tryals of his love and faithfulness toward me. And with this answer *Haufray* and *Henry* departed, altho' sorrowful in heart, that they could not work their wills upon him.

They being gone, *Valentine* stayed still in the King's Hall, with the other Nobles that were there assembled, and *Orson* went here and there round about the Palace; at last he came unto the Kitchin, where the Cooks were making ready supper, and being there, he espyed two Capons ready

for

for the fire, made towards the Capon, fet upon them, and eat them up raw like a hungry dog: The Cook ſeeing him eat up his Capons, took a peſtle that lay by him, and lent him ſuch a blow, that he made him bow therewith; *Orſon* feeling the blow, ſtooped down, and took the Cook up between the legs, and threw him down upon the ground, and when down, he ſo belaboured the poor Cook, that he had like to beat him to death. Tydings was brought unto the King, that *Orſon* had ſlain the Cook. and none durſt come near him. The King hearing thereof, willed him to be brought before him, and made ſigns unto him that he ſhould be hanged. But *Orſon* fetched the peſtle, and made ſigns how the *Cook* had beaten him therewith; wherefore the King commanded, that none ſhould offer him any injury. So after that, *Valentine* taught him manners, how he ſhould behave himſelf; and ſo they both lived quietly in the Court.

It chanced that not long after the coming of *Valentine* and *Orſon* into the Court, that Duke *Savary* ſent certain Meſſengers unto King *Pepin*, which ſaid unto him, Great King, our good Duke hath ſent us unto you, to requeſt your aid againſt a falſe and accurſed Pagan (called the Green Knight) who hath beſieged his Confines, and intended to have his Daughter by force of Arms, notwithſtanding all the reſiſtance that he and his three Sons can make. The King having heard this meſſage, made this anſwer: We agree to give him all the Aid we can. He had no ſooner given anſwer unto the Meſſengers, but there was come unto the Court another Meſſenger from *Lyons*, who after his duty done unto the King, ſaid thus, Renowned King, aſſemble your Men of War in readineſs, and conduct them towards *Lyons*, for the *Almains* are coming againſt you in Great Numbers; their whole Force conſiſting of above an hundred thouſand fighting Men. The King hearing of this ſudden news, was much troubled in mind, and preſently called before him the Arch-biſhop of *Rhemes*, the Duke of *Mylon Daugler*, *Garvas* and *Sampſon*, theſe with others of his Nobles being Aſſembled he declared what the Meſſenger had ſaid, and withal, craved their councel what was beſt to be done, whether to go to *Aquitain*, to ſuccor Duke *Savary*, or to *Lyons*, to reſiſt the *Almains*? Whereunto *Mylon Daugler* made this anſwer. The Duke, I confeſs, deſerveth to be ſuccoured, but yet in two extreams, let us chuſe the leſs: Therefore I judge it moſt meet, firſt to defend our own Land, that is now in preſent danger; and for the Duke, he muſt be content to take our preſent Affairs for anſwer. So generally it was concluded to go for *Lyons*. With theſe words, the Meſſenger that came from Duke *Savary*, departed, and carried theſe tydings with him to *Aquitain*, which made him very ſorrowful to hear it, be-

cauſe

cause the *Green Knight* had very strongly assailed him. Now here, gentle Reader, I let you understand, for the better ordering your proceedings, this *Green Knight* here spoken of, was Brother to *Ferragus*, the Giant that kept the Lady *Bellisant* in his Castle, who was the distressed Mother of these two Infants, born in the VVood, called *Valentine* and *Orson*, as it is before declared. Duke *Savary* perceiving no hope of aid from King *Pepin*, made open Proclamation throughout all his Dominions. That all, of what condition soever, should be ready arm'd against the morrow after, for he would then go out upon the *Green Knight*, and fight with him in the field; all which was accordingly performed. The day appointed being come, both Armies met as well horse as foot; the Pagans presented themselves in multitudes, and the *Green Knight* behaved himself so valiantly, that at the first encounter, with his Battel-Ax, at two blows, he slew two valiant knights: Duke *Savary* perceiving him to be so valiant a General, came up to encounter him, and meeting, they assailed each other; but the Duke was ill advised to venture his Body against the *Green Knight*, because it was ever peremptorily reported of him, that he should never be overcome of any, except he were a King's Son; and such a one as had never sucked the breasts of any VVoman. But the *green Knight* was herein deceived, for he thought it impossible any such Man should be upon the face of the Earth, but it fell out contrary to his expectation, as you shall understand.

Let us now return to the two valiant Leaders, who fought long and fiercely; but the Duke ventured so far into the Enemies hands, that when he had thought to have retired, he could not; for he was round begert with such multitudes of Pagans, that he was taken prisoner, and brought back unto the *green Knight*, whose Ramsom could not be granted for any gold or treasure. His men at arms perceiving the Duke surprised, returned to *Aquitain*, sore lamenting the loss of their good Duke. And his three Sons, *garin* the elder, *Anselmne*, and *garin* the younger, made great moan to see the hard hap of their Father.

The Sons having shewed their sorrows, in comes *Fezon* his Daughter, with this lamenting out-cry: Alas, in an ill hour was I born, seeing that so many valiant Knights and Gentlemen have suffered death in my quarrel; and yet there is one thing more troubleth my distempered soul than all the rest; which is this, That my Father should be held Captive in the hands of his Enemies, the only way to bring his aged years with sorrow to the grave. Alas! (dear Father) your love to me is the only cause of all these disasterous chances. Thus fell *Fezon* into a dangerous fit of discontent, insomuch, as with this extremity of sorrow, she had well nigh finished her days, had not

the reſt of the Ladies attending, laboured to comfort her in this great ſorrow, wherewith ſhe was almoſt overcome. Whilſt the Lady was thus oppreſſed with ſorrow, the *green Knight* triumphed over the worthy Duke, cauſing him to be brought before him into his Pavillion; & having him there, began to revile him in this diſdainful manner: Duke, now thou perceiveſt that thou art my Vaſſal, and that I have power over thy life; this that I ſpeak thou canſt *not* deny; therefore let *me* tell thee what thou ſhalt *expect from* my ſacred lips; either give me thy Daughter *Fezon* to Wife, and to redeem thy life, or elſe I will have her againſt thy Will, leading her amongſt rough Mountains, and there Royally Crown her Queen of thoſe craggy Manſions. The Duke hearing theſe proud menaces, began thus to reply: Proud and inſolent Sarazen, know this, that I will never give conſent that thou have my Daughter, except thou alſo ſubſcribe to be Baptized. The *green Knight* hearing him ſay ſo, replyed, Urge me not further, for I am wholly bound to *Mahomet*, wherefore once again I tell thee, except thou yield to my demand, I will firſt make thee finiſh thy days miſerably, and afterwards conſume all *Aquitain* to aſhes; and after that, put to the ſword all that come in my way, Men, Women, and Children. The Duke hearing this Pagan thus reſolute, began again on this manner: Pagan, the gods protect me from thy cruelty; for I had rather rely on their Power than thine. The *green Knight* hearing him ſay ſo, began afreſh with him on this manner: Grave Duke, leave off theſe thy ſad laments, and hearken unto my relation, and reſolution alſo, and this it is: I am not aſhamed to let you underſtand, that thy Daughter's beauty hath enthralled me, and therefore I will recall my threatned ſentence of Death againſt thee; out of which captivate affections towards thy Daughter, I am forced to yield to condition. That thou ſhalt find out a Knight within the ſpace of ſix months, to encounter me; and if it ſo happen, that by ſtrength of Arms, he can Conquer me, I vow by *Mahomet*, to ſend thee back into thy own Country, without waſting of the ſame: But if it happen that I prove Conqueror over that Knight, then ſhalt thou willingly reſign thy fair Daughter into my hand, to be my lawful Wife. Theſe Articles being produced, the Duke willingly agreed thereunto, ſo the Truce was accordingly proclaimed. Theſe Agreements thus concluded, the *Green Knight* gave leave that Duke *Savary* ſhould depart, upon conditions, that he ſhould ſwear to keep covenants, not only for the preſent, but during his life. The Duke being thus delivered, made his repair to *Aquitain*, whither being come, he cauſed open Proclamation to be made of thoſe conditions, whereunto he had before ſubſcribed concerning his ſaid Daughter; and withal the truce taken

ken for the space of six months. His Counsellors hearing what was past, advised him to dispatch Messengers into all Lands, with these advertisements following: If there be any Knight whatsoever, that durst Encounter the *green Knight* for the love of the Beautious Lady *Fezon*, he should lay down his Gage, and so be answered. These Letters were sent into twelve Christian Lands: What followed, you may better learn by the succeeding Chapter.

Chap. XI. *How divers Knights arrived at* Aquitain, *at the solmn Just there holden to bear away the Love of the Beautious Lady* Fezon. *How* Haufray *and* Henry, *accompanied with a Troop of their Confederates, lay in Ambush to take away the life of* Valentine.

DUring this time of the truce, between Duke *Savary*, and the *green Knight*, King *Pepin*, had taken his Journey against his Enemies at *Lyons*, accompanied with a mighty Host; being come before the City with his forces, he set upon King *Lampatris*, who had also brought into the field a hundred thousand Men: *Lampatris* was King of *Sires*, *Holland*, and *Friz-land*, with the Country of *Monemarch*; in the which stood a very strong City, whereunto they withdrew themselves, King *Pepin* getting knowledge hereof, strongly besieged it, insomuch that at last they were constrained to yield, or suffer Banishment; but resolving upon the safety of their lives, they yielded the City, which the King bestowed upon *Guy*, Marshal of *France*.

The Wars being ended, *Pepin* returned into *France*, with all his warlike Soldiers; being arrived at *Paris*, it was told him, Duke *Savary* had taken truce with the *green Knight*, and the manner how; whereat the King laughing, said, in the presence of his Barons, Who is he amongst you that would win fair *Fezon* for his Love, he must take upon him a Combate against the *green Knight*, whom if he Conquer and Overcome, the Duke will not only Give him his Daughter, but one half of his Possessions; and that this is true, behold Letters written with his own hand. Every one of these worthy Knights viewed these Letters, yet none of them all durst undertake the Enterprise, save only *Valentine*, who perceiving them all refuse it, said thus unto the King, dear Soveraign, if it please you to give me leave, I will adventure my strength upon that *green Knight*, and will gladly undertake the task: Again, I have a great desire to leave *France*, for I long to take in hand some tedious Journey, to find out the Mother that bore me, and from whence I am descended. *Valentine*, said the King,

take thou no care, whence thou art, for it reſteth in my power to make thee greater than any Man within my Court: And for that I find thee willing to go to *Aquitain*, I freely give thee leave; but on condition, That after thou haſt tryed thy Manhood with the *Green Knight*, thou return, if thou eſcape with life. *Valentine* yielded to the King in his demand, and ſo, taking leave, he ſhortly after prepared to his Journey. When *Eglantine* heard that he would go to *Aquitain*, ſhe was very ſorrowful, and at laſt, in the midſt of Tears, ſent for *Valentine* to come to her; *Valentine* promiſed the Meſſenger to be with her anon, which accordingly he performed; and being come, ſhe burſt out in tears, ſaying, Ah, *Valentine*! now I do well perceive that all my Joys are at an end, and that you are reſolved to leave this Country of *France*: Ah! would it might be my good hap to go with you, for there is not a Man living, whom I hold ſo dear as you, and (were not I curbed by my birth) I would make thee my Husband. And that thou maiſt the better perceive my true intent, take thou here the keys of my treaſure, and take what pleaſeth thee, for there is great ſtore; and the gods give thee ſuccour, in all thy Knightly enterprizes. Lady, quoth he, Silver and Gold I need none; but that which moſt of all diſtempereth my breaſt, is, That I cannot learn of my deſcent: Moreover, one thing more troubleth me as much as the other, which is, That I bare upon one of my ſhoulders a Croſs, & is of the colour of gold, of which ſign I know not what to gather; but reſolve thus, never to reſt in any place, until ſuch time as I have found out the place of my Nativity. And ſo, lovely Lady; I take my leave, earneſtly requeſting you to ſtop the Current of theſe Tears: And withal, I vow, That if I find my birth anſwerable to the Majeſty from whence you are deſcended, to take you as my only Choice to Wife, forſaking all other. On the other ſide, having found out my birth, and perceiving it not anſwerable to yours, I would not be your Husband for all the wealth in the World: for malicious tongues in time to come will ſay, Where's the Brethren, Siſters, or Couſins of this Runagade, that hath preſumed to match himſelf unto the Daughter of our mighty King *Pepin*? Having ſpoken theſe words, he departed, leaving *Eglantine* full of grief. But when ſhe had ſome little time ſat ſtill, ſhe could not be ſatisfied, but offered to follow him whitherſoever he went; and in concluſion, brought him ſome part of his way, being accompanied with divers of the Nobility. *Valentine* being departed, *Haufray* and *Henry* were right glad, privily conſpiring how to bring it to paſs, that he and *Orſon*, who went along with him, might by Treachery come unto an untimely Death.

Valen-

Valentine and *Orson* having taken their leave of *King Pepin*, addressed themselves for *Aquitain*. Being on their way, *Hanfray* and *Henry* consulted together, joning to their Aid a Third, who was Cousin to them, how they might lye in Ambush to set upon *Valentine* and *Orson*, to work their Destruction: which number was about thirty able Men. This plot being thus come to perfection, charge was given to these warlike Men, that if they could not overcome *Valentine* and his Brother *Orson to* Death, yet they should lay hold *on Valentine*, and keep him safe. The place appointed where this should be done, was a very large and great Forrest, thro' which they must needs pass. Not long after the Ambush was pitched, it chanced that *Valentine* came riding along, with *Orson* running by his side swifter than any horse, who coming near the place where these Men lay, forth steps their Captain, called *Gryger*, accompanied with all his *Troop*,

with their Weapons drawn, thinking to have surprized *Valentine* on the sudden, and to have put him to Death: Now this fierce Traytor lent him such a mortal Blow, that the Sword pierced quite thro' his Armour, and entred into the flesh, insomuch as the *blood followed* the blow, and withal uttered

tered these unwelcome words, *Valentine*, either yield thy self Captive, or receive thy Death. *Valentine*, as a Man all amazed, was somewhat moved at the sight of his Blood, and considering how he was encompass'd with a multitude of his Enemies, recommending his Innocency unto the gods, at last spoke on this manner: My Lords, speaking to *Haufray* and *Henry*, I see well that you have determined my days by Treason, and without cause on my part given; but yet I assure you, that before I yield my self into your hands, or before this days Sun be set, I shall send some of you here present into such a Country, that you shall scarcely ever return again to bring tydings of your Valour, And therewithal drew forth his Sword, and gave the first that Encountered him such a Blow upon the head, that he clave him to the Teeth, and there he lay for Dead: After that, he betook him towards the rest, with such violence, that at every stroak one fell before him. *Orson* perceiving his Brother thus to lay about him, began to Rouze himself, and with his rough hands and piercing tallons, rent and tore all that came in his way, and so bit them with his Teeth, that they fell groveling unto the Ground one upon another, where he trampled over them like dirt, pinching them with his Feet. *Valentine* seeing *Orson* thus bestir himself, held up his bloody Sword, defending himself, and offending his Enemies so valiantly, that they all forsook them, and durst not stay within their sight: *Grygar*, their Captain, perceiving all his Men thus killed and overcome, cryed out with a loud voice on this manner: *Valentine*, yet I wish thee yield, or else look for nothing but Death. *Valentine* hearing these insulting words, made towards *grygar*, and in a furious manner assailed him, but being too forward, he plunged himself into the Throng, that he was enclosed round about, keeping off *Orson* with their long spears. Being thus begirt with Enemies, he still behaving himself so valiantly that none durst lay hands upon him, till at last they gathered in so close upon him, that he was overme with Multitudes, and being not able any longer to wield his Sword, they took him, bound him, and carry'd him away. *Orson* perceiving his Brother thus posted away, ran after, making a hideous Noise; but he could not overtake them, for they rid swifter than he could run, and having at last lost sight of them, knew not which way he were best to take, *grygar* commanded them to follow after *Orson*, and bring him back, either Alive or Dead; but in vain they followed, for he out-run them, and so escaped. These that had the Charge of *Valentine*, brought him to a Castle standing in the midst of a Forrest, kept by a Notable Thief, who was Cousin-german to *grygar*; *Valentine* being entred the Castle-gate, they entreated him evilly, and conveyed him to a deep Dungeon, which grieved him

to

to the heart, insomuch that he burst out into these speeches: Alas, now is that come upon me which I ever feared, for I am fallen into the hands of my deadliest Enemies; and those that have ever sought my life. Farewel King *Pepin*, for I fear I shall never see thee more; and that which most vexeth me, is, that they shall never understand the truth of my death, for the stench of this loathsome dungeon doth even stop my breath. Farewel *Orson*, for thou hast already suffered Death for my sake; and more could no man do, even as much as if thou hadst been my natural Brother. Farewel my dear Mother also, whom I have ever laboured to find out, that I might see and know her, but my hopes are all frustrated, for I now must dye without the knowledge of what Parentage I am descended. Thus he lamented, whilst his Enemies determine what shall be done to him: Some were of Opinion to put him to Death; others, that he should be committed to a perpetual Imprisonment, But *grygar*, being Lord over the rest, would not yield he should be put to Death, but rather to keep him in Prison, till *Haufray* and *Henry* have received knowledge of their proceedings. Having thus set down their resolution, they determine to take their Journey towards *Paris*, where the King then lay, to meet with *Haufray* and *Henry*, who entertained them Royally, being right glad that *Valentine* was fallen into their hands. Now understand, that *Orson* all that Night was fain to rest within the Wood, lying down at the root of a Tree; the morning being come, he took his way towards *Paris*, never resting till he came into the presence of King *Pepin*: Being come thither, by signs and tokens he shewed the manner of the taking of *Valentine*; but yet for all the hast he made, *grygar* arrived at the Court before him. *Haufray* and *Henry* were much grieved that *Orson* had escaped, but all their comfort was he could not speak, thinking thereby for to Escape from mistrust and suspition, but their hopes were soon laid in the Dust, as hereafter will appear.

The next day the two Brethren had appointed that *grygar* should return in all hast, to the Castle, to put *Valentine* to Death, thereby thinking all their Treasons might pass undiscovered. But see how it came about, that all their Counsels were quite overthrown; for *Orson* came unto the King's Palace that morning, and growing towards dinner-time, the Tables being all prepared, the King, accompanied with sundry Nobles, Barons, and Knights, came in, and every Man took his place. The King being set, and casting his Eyes about, suddenly espied *Orson*, whom when he beheld, he thought by him that *Valentine* was not far off, but it fell out contrary. *Orson* ran through the Hall, making a lamentable noise, and knock-

knocking his breast in a most hideous and fearful manner, which drove the King into ten thousand fears, and all the rest who beheld this lamentable spectacle. *Orson* ran along by the Table, looking very fiercely upon every Man, and making many fearful signs: Amongst the rest, at the last he lighted upon the Traytor *Grygar*, who espying *Orson* hung his head in his bosom: *Orson* having once got the sight of him, run furiously upon him, and gave him such a sturdy stroak, that he smote off his ears; after he began to lay upon his face, insomuch that he put out one of his eyes, and broke one of his teeth. *Grygar* being thus wounded, began to cry out for help; but *Orson* hearing him make such an uproar, ran again upon him, and gave him such a sturdy stroak, that he felled him unto the Earth, overthrowing tables, meat, and all that stood before him, which drove all the beholders into admiration: And had he not been rescued by a valiant Prince that then set at board, he had never gone from that place alive: The Prince having rescued him, began to say unto the King on this manner: Mighty King, consider into what danger this Man is fallen by the fury of this Wild-man: and either let him dye for this presumptuous fact, or no man will be able to come into your Court. The King hearing him say so, replyed, We will consider the cause, and as we find it, so we will proceed against him: Bring him hither before us, that we may question the cause of the fact. *Orson* was upon these words brought before the King, and he demanded, How he durst presume so far into the presence of his Majesty? *Orson* answered by signs how he had slain *Valentine* in the Forrest, and that he would be Revenged for his Death, on that inhumane Traytor *Grygar*; and withal closed his fist, and put it to his mouth in great rage, in token of defiance. King *Pepin* perceiving by his actions, the cause of the matter, called forth unto all the Lords and Barons on this manner: My Lords, you see, as well as I, that this Wild-man hath Challenged *Grygar* to fight him; therefore tell me your Opinions, what is best to be done in this case, for I cannot chuse but marvel why this Wild-man should find out *Grygar* above all the rest of the Knights here assembled; therefore let every man freely speak, for I much doubt some hidden secret to lye therein; and for my part, I could willingly give consent that it should be tryed forth by Combat between them. When the King had thus uttered what he thought, the Barons agreed to the verdict that the King had passed. So the Battle was determined, and *grygar* was brought to the King, to the intent he should undergo the Challenge against the Wild-man; *grygar* hearing what the King had determined, was very fearful, and sad, and not without cause, for he fore-saw that his Treason would come

come to light; and therewithal cast an ill-favoured eye on *Haufray*. *Henry* perceiving *grygar* stand so amazed, said, *grygar* fear not, for I promise thee, however it fall out, that no danger shall come unto thee from our Father the King, for we will work your peace, so thou wilt swear never to reveal the Fact. Yea, quoth he, I well perceive how the case will go with me, I must suffer a reproachful Death for your sakes. Having thus said, he left *Henry*, and returned again unto the King, saying, Mighty King, let me make one request unto your Majesty, that you would dismiss me from this dangerous task; the reason chiefly moving me, is, that insomuch that it is not man against man, whereby a Knight may win Honour, but a wild Savage to Encounter with a Man, and no Knight: *I* think *I* may safely, so your Grace be pleased, refuse the Combat. Nay, quoth the King, no excuse in this case can be admitted, for the Combat is granted, not only by my advice, but also by the Counsel of my Barons; and the reason moving us to grant it, was, that Treason long lying hid, might come to light. *Grygar* hearing it thus concluded on, grew more into dispair; but *Haufray* being there, comforted him again on this manner: Doubt not, for you have equity on your part; and besides, *I* will see you well Armed in all points fitting your Knightly Race. When *Orson* gathered by signs, that he should fight with this Traytor, he was right glad; and withal, made shews unto the King that *Valentine* was dead; whereat the King grew wondrous sad. And fain would *Orson* have been upon the back of *grygar*, but that the King commanded him to be taken away; making signs unto him that he should strike no more, till the time they could meet for the tryal of the truth. Again, the King called unto *grygar*, to make haste to Arm himself; *grygar* loath to venture his life upon so uncertain ground, began once again to speak unto the King, saying, Most dread Soveraign, *I* have been long Servitor about your Person, both in War and Peace; but you reward me not accordingly, insomuch, as you compel me to fight against a Man that hath neither sense, reason, nor in truth, humane shape. *grygar*, said the King, if the truth be on your side, you need not fear, for you shall enter into the field well Armed. Again, you shall be well Mounted, he on Foot; nor shall he bear any Weapon. The right, you say, is on your side; wherefore maintain that right, and shew your valour; for the sentance of Combat may not be recalled.

I Grygar

Chap. XII. *How* Orson *and* Grygar *fought together*; *and how* Orson *returning Victor, caused* Grygar *to confess the Treason, who was after Hanged, and* Valentine *delivered from the Dungeon. How* Grygar *being vanquished by* Orson, *confessed his Treason to King* Pepin, *and how* Haufray *and* Henry, *had been the only Plotters thereof against the worthy* Valentine.

THE place of the Combat being appointed, *Orson* attended in readiness for his Enemy; in the end, *Grygar* being well Armed by *Haufray* and *Henry*, took his leave of them on this wise: My Lords, in your cause am I delivered over to death; evil was the day wherein I began this enterprize. Hold thy peace, said *Henry*, for I will defend thee from the Sentance of my Father, and work thy safety, so thou wilt be secret. *Grygar* being thus Armed, and well mounted, went towards the Palace gate, where this Combat was to be effected: the hour being come, the King repaired to the Window, all the Nobles in the Court being assembled; the Judges were appointed, that no wrong should be offered on either part. So *Grygar* being entred the lists, he espied *Orson*, and began to draw near unto him, saying, Villain, thou hast offer'd me great wrong, in putting out one of my Eyes; but e'er I part, I will make thee acknowledge that wrong, and that thou hast falsely accused me. *Orson* perceiving whereunto his proud speeches tended, shewed him his Nails, gnashing his Teeth; whereat *Grygar* suddenly couched his spear, and run upon him; *Orson* espying the spear bent against him, gave back, whereby *Grygar* was disappointed of his mark, and ran his spear fast in the ground; *Orson* taking this advantage, suddenly seized the spear into his own hands, and having hold thereof, gave his Enemy such a stroak therewith, that he astonied him. *Grygar* feeling the fury of the stroak, set spurs to his horse, and rid like a mad Man about the field; *Orson* ran after him with a grinning countenance, making signs unto the King, that he would e're long force him to yield unto him. *Grygar* fearing the danger wherein he was like to fall, secretly to himself murmured out these words: Ah, *Haufray*! for thy cause and sake I am thus delivered over to Death. Long and tedious was the fight; but *Grygar* could never so much as wound the Wild-man. At last *Orson* cast away his spear, and come to *Grygar*, in such manner, that he caught his Horse fast by the Neck, making him so mad and furious, that he overthrew his Rider, and with the fall he lost his shield; which *Orson* espying, took it up, and put it on his own back; after he came unto *Grygar's*

gar's Horſe, and got up on him, riding round about the field, and making ill-favoured ſigns and tokens; inſomuch as all the Beholders ſtood as Men diſmayed. Amongſt the reſt, the King appeared very ſorrowful; and at laſt began thus to ſpeak: My Lords, I know not what to think hereof, neither can I yet perceive whereunto this fight will grow; but it is my opinion, that there is treaſon ſmothered, and not yet come to light. *Orſon* having a great while ranged about the field on horſe-back, after his Enemy, at laſt forſook his horſe, and encountred *grygar* on foot, inſomuch, that he lent him ſuch a blow, that he ſmote him to the Earth; afterward he leapt upon him, and diſarmed him of his weapons; then the next blow he ſtruck, he ſmote off one of his Arms; next on the body he gave him ſuch a wound, that he cut him even to the reins of his back. *grygar* having received all theſe wounds, cryed out moſt pittifully, inſomuch that every one requeſted he might have a Prieſt to confeſs him of his ſins. The Guard that was appointed for the field, hearing theſe out-crys, ſent out a worthy Knight, to demand what he would have done: Unto whom *grygar* ſaid, Sir, bring me before the King's Majeſty, and before him, and the reſt of this Aſſembly I ſhall reveal the Treaſons whereof I am guilty, from point to point effectually.

At laſt *grygar* was brought before the King, who asked pardon for his high offence; and in the preſence of all the Beholders, told him, That the only Actors in this traiterous plot, where *Hanfray* and *Henry* his Sons, and by their means he had taken *Valentine*, and put him in Priſon; and there meaned to put him to Death. The King having heard his tale, and perceiving the whole truth of this plot, commanded *grygar* to be hanged upon the next tree he came to. He having thus given ſentence againſt *grygar*, called for his Horſe, and being mounted, made all haſt poſſible unto the Priſon where *Valentine* lay. *Orſon* perceiving the King would undertake ſuch a journey, addreſſed himſelf to run along by the King's Horſe, leading him the way, and making many ſigns of joy and gladneſs. The King marking well all the Wild-man's behaviour, often ſpake unto his Lords in this manner: My Lords, it is wonderful that this Wild-man ſhould bear ſuch an ardent affection towards *Valentine*; and beſides it ſtrikes me into a thouſand imaginations. Now you muſt know, that the King had great cauſe to love this Wild-man, for that he was his natural Nephew, tho as yet not revealed; neither was the time yet come to bring it to light, till that by *Clerimond*, Siſter to the Gyant *Ferragus*, it ſhould be made manifeſt; for at that time *Clerimond* had a Caſtle, and in it a Head of Braſs, compoſed by *Negromancy*; which Head told unto *Cle-*

rimond, all that ſhould happen unto her all her life; and alſo, all that ever ſhe had done in her fore-paſſed time: Beſides, this ſame Head was compoſed by ſuch wondrous Magick-art, that it ſhould never leave off ſpeaking, until the nobleſt Knight in the World ſhould enter the Caſtle, and then the Head utterly to give over, and never to ſpeak more. This fell out upon *Valentine*, whom the fair Lady *Clerimond* ſhall take to Husband, and for whom he ſhall endure a world of miſeries, as in the ſucceeding Hiſtory you ſhall underſtand. So leave we this, and return back again to King *Pepin*, where before we left him: King *Pepin* goeth on towards the *Forreſt*, to ſave the life of *Valentine*; and *Orſon* being with him, brought him unto the Caſtle wherein he was impriſoned: Being come to the gates thereof, the *Porters*, knowing the King, *barred* the Gates; for ſo they were commanded by the Reſidue within the Caſtle. The King perceiving he could not enter in peace, commanded his Attendants to enter by force, and ſo they did: Being got in, they ſeized upon all the *Traitors*, and bound them faſt in Chains; having ſo done, they went into the dungeon where *Valentine* lay bound, and brought him forth unto the King: *Valentine*, ſpying the King, fell upon his Knees, yielding him thanks for that *extraordinary* kindneſs ſhewed to him, in delivering him out of a hell of darkneſs, and fear of death. The Barons alſo that attended the King, welcomed him with great joy and gladneſs, telling him all that had happned, and how that *Orſon* had fought with the *Trayzor Grygar*, in his *quarrel*, and overcome him. *Valentine* hearing this, embraced *Orſon*. Afterwards the King commanded that all the *Traytors* ſhould be led into the wood, and there hanged; and after ſpake thus unto *Valentine*, ſeeing it is thy good hap to be thus miraculouſly delivered out of the hands of thine Enemies, I would adviſe thee to abide with me. But he replyed, Dread Soveraign, Pardon me, *for I will never return* again, till I have found out my Parents, of whence I am deſcended; and ſo humbly I take my leave of your Majeſty.

So here we leave King *Pepin*, and only look upon *Valentine* and *Orſon*, who are taking their way towards *Aquitain*, to fight the *Green Knight*, a Man feared of all men: For I muſt call to Remembrance, that of which I told you before, that he ſhould never be vanquiſhed by any, ſave only by a Kings Son that had never ſucked VVoman. Being come to *Aquitain*, the People flocked from all parts, to ſee the rough and unmanly ſhape of *Orſon*; but *Valentine* ſeeing their folly, made him a jacket of ſteel, when *Orſon* had it on, he was much offended thereat, and would have thrown it away, but he much feared *Valentine*, and would no any thing he commanded.

ded. *Orson* having his jacket upon his back, looked much upon himself, and at last became proud thereof, and set his countenance according to his heart. Now, as they were riding on their way, *Valentine* espying a fair 'Squire, making much lamentation; *Valentine* beholding him well, said thus unto him, Friend, what aileth you to shed these tears? have you sustained any wrong, either by Man or Beast? tell me what may be the cause, and I promise you the best of my power to relieve you. Alas, said he, thereof I make no doubt; but know this, that the cause of my laments, is the loss of a most kind and gentle Master; a Man of the greatest valour in Christendom. How have you lost him? (quoth *Valentine.*) Sir, as I was travelling towards *Aquitain*, to fight with the *Green-knight*, thinking thereby to win the fairest Lady in the world, called *Fezon*, which Lady it is not possible for any one to have, except first he overcome, in single combat, the *Green Knight*: Divers valiant Knights have there miscarried; and when he conquered them, he caused them to be hanged on a Tree; and the number that are already dead, are thirty two, yielding no shew of mercy towards any. Is all this true, quoth *Valentine*, that thou hast told me? Why then, sure he is some Devil in Man's shape, that doth such strange Exploits. But towards *Aquitain* am I journying, to try my fortune against him, for I have heard much of that Lady *Fezon*. Ah, Sir! (quoth the 'Squire) go not thither, to lose your life by such a Devil. 'Squire (said *Valentine*) I will go forward, and mean to cope with that famous *Green Knight*; but if I can escape him, I will first talk with the Lady *Fezon*, and take her Advertisement.

Orson gathering some understanding of their talk, made signs to *Valentine*, that he might fight with the *Green-knight*, and that he would make love to the Lady *Fezon*; whereat he laughed heartily. By this time, think them to come near the City of *Aquitain*, standing upon a Hill; and meeting with an old Man, he questioned with him, what City that was before him: Marry (quoth he) it is *Aquitain*. Now tell me, (said *Valentine*) where resteth the *Green Knight*? Why, Sir, said he, without the City; I think you are going to fight with him. Ay, quoth *Valentine*. Ah, Sir! (said the old Man) undertake not so foul a folly, for it is not possible to conquer him. Come hither my Son, and stand thou on this little Hill, and I shall shew thee above Forty famous Knights hanging on a Tree, whom he hath overcome: Also there is now but fifteen days to be accomplished, and the Duke of *Aquitain* must part with his fair Daughter *Fezon*, to his great grief, and the overthrow of the whole Kingdom. Father, quoth *Valentine*, the Gods defend her. He had no sooner spoke these words, but

there came another ancient Man of fourscore years of age, in the habit of a Pilgrim; this Man was that *Blandiman*, Squire to the distressed *Bellisant*, and he it was that led the Lady *Bellisant* into the Castle of *Ferragus* the Giant, as before we have declared; *Valentine* espying him, demanded of him whence he was, and whence he came? Sir, quoth the Pilgrim, from *Constantinople*; but I could not enter into the City, by reason a Pagan Souldan had begirt it with a siege; neither could I come to deliver the message on which I am sent; wherefore I thought it my safest course to return. Pilgrim, quoth *Valentine*, what thinkest thou of the *green Knight*, is it not possible he should be overcome? No, said the Pilgrim, I advise you not to follow the enterprize; for if there were a whole hundred of you, he would see the end of you all. Father, whether go you? (said *Valentine.*) Sir, I take my readiest way to *Paris*, for I have a Message to King *Pepin*, from a Sister of his Named *Bellisant*, that long hath been banished from *Constantinople* wrongfully; and now is the good Lady in the house of a Gyant, that keepeth her, and useth her honourably; intending to know King *Pepin*'s mind, whether he be consented to those wrongs done unto her, for he well knoweth she is a vertuous Lady; and for her sake, offereth to put himself in single Combat with the Emperor of *greece*, for that he hath so wrongfully banished her. Palmer, quoth *Valentine*, I pray thee to return back again with me to *Aquitain*, for thither am I going, to fight with the *green knight*: If the gods give me Victory against him, I will accompany thee into *France*, for I shall tell thee, only for the love I bear unto King *Pepin*, undertake I this fight, for he hath been the means of my preservation, and as a Father unto me. Therefore to him I dedicate all my labours, and rest wholly at his command. Sir, quoth *Blandiman*, to this motion I will never consent, for my Lady hath put me in trust to dispatch her affairs, and I will discharge the duty of a trusty Servant towards her; and so, taking my leave, I commend you to the protection of the gods. The Palmer being gone, *Valentine* looked long after him, and not without cause, but he wist not why; for this was the Man that had born a part of his Mothers Exiles. Well *Valentine* took on his Journey, and after some few days, came near to the City of *Aquitain*. *Valentine* beheld the City very earnestly, and passing on, he espyed a pleasant Fountain, thither he went, and alighting from his Horse, laid him down under a tree, to refresh him; and *Orson* was his keeper all the while. Anon he awak'd and prepared to take Horse again, but suddenly arrived at the same Fountain a most curious Knight, proud, and of so haughty a stomach, that he was stiled the proud Knight, and withal, so

fierce

fierce and reſolute, that he never asked queſtion of any Man; yet if he, whom he met, ſaluted him not, he preſently killed him: This Proud Knight came to the Fountain, and *Valentine* beholding him, ſaid never a Word; and *Orſon* alſo gazed fiercely on him. The proud Knight was angred in his heart, and approached near unto *Orſon*, and gave him ſuch a blow, that the blood iſſued out of his Mouth; *Orſon* feeling the blow ſmart, ſuddenly took him and threw him on the Earth, and preſently eſpying a knife at the knight's girdle, ſmote him therewith into the body ſo deep, that he was nothing but blood. The Knight feeling himſelf wounded, cryed out aloud, whereupon *Valentine* coming in, reſcued the Knight out of *Orſon*'s hands, and ſaid, Fair Knight, you have offered great wrong to ſmite a poor Wild-man on this rude manner, who can ſpeak never a word. With that, the Proud knight began thus roughly to anſwer *Valentine*: Proud Miſcreant, why then doſt thou not ſalute me? And therewith drew forth a Glave, thinking to have ſmitten him; *Valentine* ſeeing the blow, drew forth his ſword, and ſtruck at the Proud knight with ſuch violence, that he ſtruck him dead. The proud knight being dead, his Men fled with all the haſt they could to *Aquitain*, bearing tydings of their Maſter's Death. Duke *Savary* hearing thereof, was greatly diſpleaſed, for he was his Couſin. Amongſt the reſt, *Valentine* underſtood of the lamentation that was for the death of the Proud knight beſide the Fountain; whereupon he ſuddenly mounted and entred the City, where he lodg'd in a Burgeſs's houſe, whereby it came to the Ears of Duke *Savary*, that he had ſlain his Couſin. And the Duke commanded that *Valentine* and his Brother *Orſon* ſhould be brought before him; ſo being come into the preſence of the Duke, he began on this manner: Friend, of whence are you? What Prince do you ſerve? And whether be ye knights, or no? Sir, ſaid *Valentine*, I am a knight, and owe my duty and ſervice to the famous *Pepin* of *France*. Then ſaid the Duke unto him you have ſlain my Couſin. 'Tis true, ſaid he, and ſo I ſhould have done, had it been my own kinſman, for he was of ſo high a ſtomach, that he diſdained to ſpeak to any Man; and ſmote ſo furiouſly at my Companion, that he had near killed him; which I perceiving, drew forth my ſword and ſlew him. Fair Duke, know this, I am a ſtranger in the City, and hither am I come to Combat with the *Green Knight*; as alſo to behold that beauteous Lady *Fezon*, whom the whole World admires: Wherefore I think it a Law of Equity, for Strangers to paſs up and down in ſafety. Conſider, I have ſhewed you the cauſe of my coming. When the Duke heard *Valentine* ſay ſo; he ſaid unto him, Knight, right well haſt thou anſwered me; and ſeeing my Couſin hath come by this, more by

Pride

Pride, than Courage, I am right ſorrowful, and ſo I paſs it over, and pardon thy deed; but in that you urge, that your coming hither was only to Combat the *Green-knight*, come you into my Palace, and there you ſhall behold the Beauty for which you thus far adventure: Moreover, that you may ſee that you are not come alone, you ſhall behold fifteen knights to accompany you, and now arrived for the love of the Lady *Fezon*, and to try their valour againſt the ſaid *green-knight* their Enemy. Go, I ſay, to my Palace, ſalute my Daughter, as my Cuſtom is to Strangers, before they adventure their Perſons in Battle with the *green-knight*; and having preſented your ſelves before her in the ſign of Love, you ſhall receive from her a Ring of Gold. Sir, quoth *Valentine*, I ſhall be ready to do all rites and cuſtoms; and beſides, I will obey you in all things whatſoever it ſhall pleaſe you to command.

This conference ended, the Duke went into the Caſtle, accompanied with *Valentine* and *Orſon*; having entered the Hall, where the Knights were aſſembled, *Valentine* beheld the Lady ſitting amongſt them; and, making his way unto her, with all duty and reverence, at laſt he ſaluted her thus: Lady, you whoſe beauty and fame is ſpread thro' the World, the gods preſerve thee from the *green-knight*, who I dare boldly avouch is not worthy to touch your ſuper-excellent Lips. Moreover, dear Lady, may it pleaſe you to underſtand, that *Pepin*, the mighty King of *France*, hath ſent me hither to preſent unto you the moſt Noble Man that liveth on the Earth; wherefore Lady behold him well, for he feareth no Man, nor any weapon, albeit he cannot ſpeak: wherefore I aſſure you, that the *green-knight* is not able to withſtand his mighty force, nor make any reſiſtance againſt him. Sir, quoth the Lady, I yield unto the King of *France* thanks; as alſo to you that have taken ſuch pains to preſent ſuch a one before me. But ſay, wherefore is this worthy Champion no better Cloathed? For methinks he is of an excellent Perſon, well formed, ſtrait, and of a hardy countenance; and if he were waſhed and bathed, his fleſh would be both white and ſoft. Lady, ſaith *Valentine*, he never wore Garment till very lately, and then I cauſed this Jacket to be made; moreover, I aſſure you, that when he came firſt into *Paris*, he came a Naked Man, and his fleſh was ſo hard, that he neither feared wind nor cold. While he was ſpeaking theſe words, *Fezon* beheld him very wiſhly, for ſhe was in love with him. But *Valentine* again thus ſpeak, Lady for my ſelf I muſt ſay ſomething alſo, therefore, know this, that only for the love of you I have ventured in this Climate, to ſee if Fortune will ſo much favour me, that I may bear you away from all Comers, by force of Arms; and yet, fair Lady, one

thing

thing more *I* have to utter unto you, which is, that *I* have made an Oath unto my self, that *I* will never return again into *France*, till *I* have proved my Fortune with the *green-knight*, and with him do *I* intend to cope before *I* part hence; and either deliver him over into your hands as conquered, or suffer Death, as many before me have. Alas, Knight, said the Lady, put not your self in danger for my sake, for methinks it is a folly in any Man, to endanger himself for the good of another. Again, there be many valiant Knights have miscarried in seeking my love, and *I* the unhappiest living, to see these unfortunate days. Lady quoth he, what *I* have vowed *I* mean to accomplish. Why then fair Knight, God be thy speed; and therewithal drew forth two Rings of Gold, giving *Valentine* the one, and *Orson* the other. Also they sat down at the Table amongst the other Knights, and were welcomed with great feastings. Being set at the Table, *Fezon* still fixed her eye on *Orson*, and *Orson* upon her, as it were interchangeably glancing love-looks one to another, with exceeding gracious aspects. Now in the midst of all their feastings, the *green-knight*, as his custom was, came thundering at the Gates, only to have a sight of the beautious Lady *Fezon*, for you shall understand, that such were the conditions between him and the Duke, that every day it should be lawful for him to enter his Palace, to behold the Lady without contradiction. Being entred the Great Hall, his manner was, to cry out with a loud voice, saying, Valiant Duke of *Aquitain*, have you yet any more Champions to fight with me for the love of this Lady? The Duke answered, yea, *I* have yet within my Palace sixteen valiant Knights that mean to try their Fortune upon thee, before they depart my Country. Then said she *green-knight*, let me see them; and likewise the fair Lady *Fezon*. Enter, said the Duke, for thou hast free liberty. Herewithal the *green-knight* entred the Hall, sternly beholding all the Knights one after another; at last, when he had gone thro' them all, he began to speak to them on this manner: Lords, eat and drink, and make merry, for to morrow will be your last; and know that it will fall out to your share to be hanged on the top of my Tree, as many before you have been served. *Valentine* well marking his high words, grew exceeding angry, and at last began to answer him: Proud Knight, these vaunts might well have lain smothered in thy breast; for I tell thee, this day is come hither a Knight that will hold thee tack, more than any that ever yet encountered thee; and whereas thou triumphantly hast conquered many, he it is shall vanquish thee, and leave thy dead Corps a prey for Ravenous Beasts. Now *Orson* understood that *Valentine* spoke all this of him, and also knew this to be

the *green-knight*, by whom so many valiant Men had lost their Lives; insomuch, that he saluted him with a fierce Visage, and whetting his Teeth, leapt from the Table, and taking the *green-knight* by the middle, threw him upon his Neck, as if he had been a little Child, and having him at that advantage, espying a Wall, threw the *green-knight* with such violence against the same, that all the Beholders thought he had broaken his Neck, for he lay as dead; and so set him down at the Table, as before; & in a laughing gesture made signs, that he would bear upon his Neck three such as the *green-knight*. At this sudden action of *Orson*, all the knights there assembled began to laugh, and coming one towards the other, said, Now is he come indeed, that shall be the overthrow of the *green-knight*. But we cannot chuse but lament the woful chance that shall befal the Lady *Fezon*, for he cannot speak, and yet is worthy of all honour amongst the Valiantest. The Lady on the other side, beholding his valour, was instantly overcome with the love of *Orson*, that only conquered her heart, & left all the rest hopeless of ever gaining the Garland at which they aimed. By this time the *green knight* was again recovered, and counting it a deed of courage, began thus to say, Lords, this Wild-man hath deceived my trust, for he came upon me unawares, without saying a word: But I think good to let you understand, that in the morning I shall be better provided; and to the end I may make him an example to all that ever went before, I will ordain for him a Gibet on purpose, higher and stronger than for any that have been vanquished; and thereon I will hang his beastly corps for beasts and birds to make their prey.

Chap. XIII. *How* Orson *Encountred the* Green-knight, *and what followed thereof; also how* Valentine *attempted to Fight with him, but could not overcome him.*

ORson perceiving the *green-knight* displeased, and to threaten him, began as fast to chatter, making signs that he would meet him on the morrow, and fight with him, and in token thereof, took off his Hood, & threw it on the Ground as his Gage: Which *Valentine* seeing, spake thus to the *green-knight*: Sir, the Wild-man challengeth you, and in token thereof hath thrown down his Gage; whereof, if your stomach serve, I advise you to take it up. Hereat the *green-knight* fretted so exceedingly, that he replyed never a word. Duke *Savary* being present, said unto him, Sir Knight, I well perceive that the battle will grow strong between the Wild-man and you; and I think he will hold you tough play; Where-

fore

fore if you chance to conquer him, you may well report of your Valour throughout the Word, for he hath tryed some part of his Courage already; and in vanquishing him, you need not stand in fear of any. The *green-knight* hereat more and more enraged, swore by *Mahomet*, That e'er the morrows Sun was set, he would try the utmost of his strength, for he should never return again from the field, but be hanged a great deal higher than any of the rest: And with these words left the Castle, and betook him to his Pavillion. He being departed, the rest of the knights still remained with the Lady *Fezon*, making great Joy, and saying one to another, that the day was come, that the *green-knight* should meet with his Match. On the other side, Fame had spread abroad the worthy Act of *Orson*, the Savage, upon the *green knight*, that multitudes of People came to see and behold him; insomuch that the Duke commanded the Gates to be shut. *Orson* perceiving the People so abundantly to approach, and hearing the noise, leapt up into a window to behold them, so that they willing to see him, and he desirous to see theem, at Night they all departed: and Supper ended, they passed the rest of the Night in merriments, and so to bed. *Valentine* being brought to his Chamber, went to bed, making signs to *Orson* to lye down by him; but he not regarded his kindness, laid him down upon the ground, according to his wonted use, and so passed away that Night. Morning being come, *Valentine* and *Orson* went into the Hall, where they found the fair Lady *Fezon*, accompanied with the other knights, holding a dispute among themselves who should first Fight with the *green-knight*. At last stood up a worthy knight of *France*, called *Galeram*, and said, Lords, so you be pleased, I am the Man intend the first tryal; to this they agreed, and presently they armed him. Being armed, he came to the Lady, taking his leave in all Joy; and she to requite his kindness, gave him free leave, wishing the Gods to preserve and keep him in all danger, so that he may return as Conqueror. The knight most humbly thanked her, and so took Horse, and hasten'd him towards the Tent of the *green-knight*. The *green-knight* perceiving from far his approach, set Spurs to his Horse, and Encountered the famous *Galeram* so fiercely, that he smote him off his Horse to the Earth. The *green-knight* seeing him on the ground, suddenly lighted from his Horse, and took off the Helm from his head, *galeram* fearing nothing but present death, yielded, but all in vain, for without pitty he first despoiled him of his Arms, and after hanged him on a Tree, as he had done the rest before. *Orson* perceiving that *galeram* was put to Death, made signs with his hands that he would fight with him presently, not letting him have any respite;

but *Valentine* answered him again by signs, that he should withdraw himself for a while; for he would first go try his own strength on him: Hereupon he put himself in Arms, and took his way towards the beauteous Lady, to take his leave, as it becomed him; being come before her, she grew wonderous sorrowful, and at last she spake unto him on this manner: Alas, fair Knight, what madness is this in you, to adventure your self for the love of such an unfortunate Lady as I? Well, if thou wilt needs run into danger, go on; but I will invoke the Gods to aid and assist thee against thine and mine Enemy, and so farewel. Leave thus taken, *Valentine* mounted, to take his way toward the *Green-knight*. As he was ready to put forth, he met with a worthy Knight, who was likewise Enamoured with the Lady, and thus began to say to him, Sir, have a little patience, I entreat you, and suffer me to go first. Friend, said *Valentine*, I freely grant your desire, go and return with Victory. This Knight's Name was *Tyris*, born in *Savoy*, a Man of great birth and living, but Riotously had run through his Means, leaving himself little, save only his Horse & Arms: Having thus obtained leave of *Valentine*, he also took leave of the Lords there assembled, and so went to the Tent of the *Green-Knight*; the *Green-Knight* perceiving *Tyris* to Approach, leapt out of his Pavillion to welcome him. *Tyris* seeing him, said, Sir, presently Mount and Defend thy self, for I breath out Defiance against thee. The *Green-knight* hearing him say so, called for his Horse, which was presently brought unto him; and putting his Foot into the Stirrup, suddenly seated himself in the Saddle, and betook him to his spear and Shield, preparing to take their Course at each other; but at the first Encounter, the *green-knight* ran so furiously, that he smote *Tyris* quite through the Body, so that he fell down Dead; which he perceiving, put a Cord about his Neck, and Hang'd him up amongst the rest.

Valentine hearing of the Death of *Tyris*, was wonderful sorrowful, yet taking Courage, he recommended himself to the Gods: having thus done, he put spurs to his Horse, and took his way speedily towards the Tent: When the *green-knight* espied him, he was more fearful of him, than of all the rest; wherefore he called unto him, saying, Knight, give Ear unto this I now shall say, seest thou yonder Tree? There shalt thou find hanging a Green shield, fetch it hither to me, and I will reward thee liberally. Sir, said *Valentine*, you have Servants enough of your own, send them, for by me it shall never be fetched. By my Law, quoth the *green-knight*, you shall either bring me the shield, or else know this, you shall never Conquer me. When *Valentine* had well considered these words he speak, as touching the

fetch.

fetching of the shield, he valiantly Rode towards the Tree, but he lost his labour, for he could not have it, whereat he was sorrowful, and returning unto the *green-knight*, in an angry mood, said, go fetch thy shield thy self, for *I* cannot have it; wherefore accursed be that Magician that so fastened it; and an evil end betide him that sent me thither to fetch it. Friend quoth he, shall *I* tell thee wherefore *I* sent thee? it was, for that this shield was given unto me by a Fairy, and therein remaineth such Vertue, that no Man, be he never so strong, can take it from the place where it is fastned, save only he alone, by whom *I* shall be overcome; and for the doubt *I* stood in of thee, therefore *I* sent thee thither, now my doubt is satisfied; and therefore *I* advise thee to return to the place from whence thou camest, and save thy self, for seeing thee so fair a Knight, *I* am forced to pity thee, and take no pleasure in thy Death, from which thou canst not escape, if thou fightest with me. Further, to the end thou shouldest not think *I* uttered these words to abuse thy patience, know this: That there is none living that can vanquish me, except first, he be the Son of a King, and next such a one as never sucked the breast of any Woman; now if thou be such a one, thou may'st overcome me, if not, thou dost but shorten thy own days by an unvimely Death. At these words *Valentine* took little pleasure, knowing that by this Relation he could not be that Man; but seeing that he was come to that enterprize, he would not return till he had assayed his strength against him, & therefore with a loud voice he speak thus, Valiant and Redoubt Knight, *I* well understand i'm not the Man by whom you shall be Conquered; yet whosoever *I* am, *I'll* not depart hence till *I* have Fought with you. By the gods, quoth the *green-knight*, then thou hast some secret Treason to Work against me, that thus thou runneth upon thy Death wilfully: But e'er *I* part with thee, *I'll* make thee know the price of this thy Rashness. And therewithal leapt upon his Horse, bidding one of his Servants bring him a Box of precious Balm; the vertue of it was such, that what Wound soever he received, tho never so Mortal, it had power instantly to heal up the Breach. After he had received it, he suddenly put Spurs to his Horse, and couching his Spear in his Rest, both ran their Course so furiously, that their Spears brake in many pieces; and they suddenly bending themselves to the next Course, most valiantly drew out their Swords; whereat *Valentine* behaved himself so nimbly, that he gave the *green-knight* so full a stroak, that he Cut him thro' his Armour, insomuch that the Blood issued out in abundance. He feeling himself Wounded, he with a blow struck away a great piece of *Valentine*'s thigh, and having thus Wounded him, said, you may see *I* can wield a Sword as well as you: *I* told you, that you would

fall under my hand; and anon I shall be fain to hang your dead Corpse on a tree, as I have done the rest as came before you. Pagan, quoth *Valentine*, vaunt not thy self over-much, for as yet I m not conquered, therefore defend thy self; and there-with he gave him such a blow, that he smote away a quarter of his shield: and the *green-knight*, at the same encounter, brake his sword upon the helm of *Valentine*, felling him from his Horse: *Valentine* being always valiant, suddenly recovered. The Pagan seeing him rise, drew a sharp pointed knife, and threw it at him, but he seeing it come, started aside, so that it missed him. The *green-knight* being thus unarmed, turned about his horse, thinking to have recovered them again; but *Valentine* being on the ground, and seeing fit opportunity, cut off his Horses feet, so that they came both tumbling to the Earth: being on the Earth; he suddenly arose, and then they were both together (by the strength of their Arms) holding each other: But in short, the bickering was so fierce, that they were both sore wounded: The Pagan quickly healed his with the balm before spoken of.

This fight continued so long, that the day began to shut in, and both grew weary: The *green-knight* was vexed that he could not overcome him, and tho' he were even spent, yet he proudly bare it out, saying, knight, give over, for I perceive thy wearines, and the Sun declineth, therefore it would be little honour for me to conquer thee: Go, return again to *Aquitain*, and rest there this night, and report, that there never encountred me so valiant a knight as thou art. But meet me to-morrow, and before thy coming, take leave of thy Friends, for thou shalt never return. *Valentine* accepted his offer, and was glad thereof; so mounting his horse, he returned to the City. When Duke *Savary*, and his Lords saw him, they were joyful and received him in great honor; amongst the rest there assembled, was *Orson*, who ran and caught him in his Arms, and kissed him: Being come into the Palace, the Duke demanded what tydings from the *green-knight*? Sir, saith *Valentine*, he resteth in his Pavillion, and I think he is of that strength and courage, that there is not a Man living able to vanquish him. *Valentine*, quoth the Duke, you have escaped well, for never did any return, but all have perished; wherefore you have proved your self a valiant knight: Gracious Duke, said he, of my Conquest, I can make but small boast, but to morrow there is appointed a new tryal, and the victory will light upon whom the gods please to favour. Having ended the conference with the Duke, *Valentine* was unarmed, and conducted to the Chamber of the Lady *Eezon*. The Lady was right joyful to see him return with life. By this time supper drew on, and the Duke taking

his

his place at the Table, caused *Valentine* to be set on his left hand; for the Duke did honour him in the highest degree; supper ended, *Valentine* withdrew himself to his private Chamber, and the *Green Knight* rested in his Pavillion, where we will leave him, and speak of *Valentine*, who being in his chamber, made many complaints.

Chap. XIV. *How* Valentine *took Advice, and sent* Orson *on the Morrow, to fight with the* Green-knight; *and how* Orson *Overcame him.*

Valentine having appointed the morrow to fight with the *Green-Knight*, began to be troubled as he lay in bed, still thinking on what hapned the day before. At last, when he had ruminated all his imaginations, he began to resolve on this; I am not, neither can he that King's Son that should overcome the *Green Knight*; for I can neither remove the shield he sent me for, neither was nourished without the breast of Woman. Again, i'm very doubtful of the combat, and therefore stand wavering, whereupon to rely. At last he began thus to think: What if *Orson* should be armed in my stead, and thereby try the worst of Fortunes wrack; Why? it shall be so. The break of day appearing, he arose, and coming to *Orson*, he told him, by signs, that he should put on his Armour, take his Horse, and make towards the *Green-knight's* Pavillion, to fight with him, *Orson* understanding his intent, leaped and danced up and down joyfully; making sighs, that the Knight should never escape; denying his horse and arms, desiring only a club, such a one as he was accustomed to; and shaking his head made signs that he would have no other armor. *Valentine* seeing this, gave him to understand, that he must put on the same armor, and ride on the same horse, for that the knight should not know but that it was *Valentine* that came against him. *Orson* understanding the subtilty intended, agreed to it; and being thus armed, contrary to his custom, he seemed personable, and made many signs that he would overcome the *green-knight* e'er noon, without mercy or pity; and in these signs he was so earnest, that he caused great laughter. *Orson* thus prepared, took his leave of the Duke, embraced *Valentine*, and made him signs to stand in fear of nothing; for before he returned, he would bring the *green knight* either alive or dead. But before he took horse, he went and took leave of the Lady *Fezon*: and espying her, would have run and killed her; for by signs he gave her to understand, that for the love of her he would fight with the Pagan knight. The Lady with a smile, made a sign that she loved him, wishing him to bear himself valiantly; and at his return he would grant him

him love: Thus having taken his leave, he betook him to his Horse, & being gone from the Palace, there was nothing so much talked of as the Wild man's combat with the *Green Knight*, whereat was much wonder: It was not long before *Orson* came to the pavilion of the *Green Knight*, and smote the top thereof with his spear, signifying defiance. The *Green Knight* taking this rustick salutation in great scorn, swore by *Mahomet*, that he would fetter his pride e'er the evening; and therewithal mounted on his steed, and couching his spear, he entred the field, *Orson* seeing him in a readiness seemed to give back, as half afraid, and presently having gathered more courage, they encountred with such force, that both horses and men fell to the Earth: Being both down, they lightly recovered, drew their sword, and laid one at the other fiercely. The *Green Knight* being fired with anger, smote *Orson* such a blow, that he cut the circle of gold on his helm, and smote a piece of his shield quite off, and wounded him deeply, that with the outrage of the strook, his sword fell

out of his hand. *Orson* seeing the blood run down, was far more fierce, rouling his eyes, and shaking his Head; at last he took the Giant such a pat on his head; that he entred the flesh, and bare apart thereof afore him,

and

and his ſword ſliding off his head; took him on the Arm ſo powerfully, that the blood followed in abundance: The *green-knight* having his Balm, feared no wounds, which made *Orſon* think it was in vain any longer to uſe his ſword, ſith he could heal himſelf ſo quickly: Upon this *Orſon* threw away all his Armor and Weapons, and ſuddenly run upon him, & caught him faſt by the arms, and caſt him on the ground, took off his helm, and held him ſo down, that the *green-knight* did yield to his mercy; *Orſon* not regarding his ſubmiſſion, would have taken away his life, if *Valentine* had not come to his reſcue, by Riding poſt to ſee the end of the combat: Being come, he made ſigns to *Orſon*, that he ſhould not kill him, which *Orſon* obeyed: And at laſt *Valentine* began thus to ſpeak to the Green-knight, ſaying, Proud Knight, you ſee that you are in the hands of your Enemy, wherefore I think it fit that you ſuffer preſent Death, for look how you have done to the vanquiſhed Knights, by hanging them on yonder tree: ſo likewiſe you your ſelf ſhould be hanged on the higheſt branch: Alas, quoth he, you ſeem to be a man of pitty, furniſhed with courteſie; therefore my requeſt unto you is, to ſpare my life: No, quoth *Valentine*, that I ſhall not, except upon condition: Firſt, That you renounce your Paganiſm: Secondly, Go with me into *France*, and tell King *Pepin*, that by *Valentine* and *Orſon* you were overcome in ſingle combat: To all theſe conditions I willingly agree, and thereunto I take my Oath, to perform whatſoever you have already ſpoken.

Then *Valentine* made ſigns unto *Orſon*, that he ſhould riſe, which he readily obeyed, but ſo, that he left nothing about him to make any further reſiſtance Being upon his feet, he ſpake thus to *Valentine*, Sir it was you that combated againſt me yeſterday, therefore you, and none but you, did I expect this day alſo; but I ſee I am conquered by the Man, that in the Duke's palace threw me on the ground. True, quoth *Valentine*, the very ſame. Why then, quoth the Green-knight, I ſhall reveal unto thee one ſecret more, and I beſeech thee grant unto me my requeſt, ſend this Knight, that hath conquered me, unto yonder tree, and if he bring away with him the ſhield there faſtned, then i'm well aſſured he is the man that ſhould conquer me. Hereupon *Valentine* made a ſign to *Orſon*, to fetch away that ſhield, who did as he appointed him; and coming near the tree, he ſtretched forth his arm to take it down, and ſuddenly it leaped into his hand, and ſo he brought it with him to the Green-Knight. When he ſaw *Orſon* have the ſhield, his heart ſmote againſt his ſides, and throwing himſelf at his feet, would have kiſſed them; but *Orſon* receiving ſigns from *Valentine* to the contrary, would not ſuffer him, but took him by the arms,

and lifted him up. Being upon his feet, he spake thus, Alas, I of all others owe unto you all my service, and all reverance; for now i'm assured you are both a hardy and a valiant Knight, and amongst all other I confess that by Conquering me, you have won unto your self everlasting Fame. Moreover, this assure your self, that he that Conquers me, can be no less than a Son unto a King and Queen, and must be such a one as never Sucked the breast of any Woman: And that this shall appear to be Truth, I shall further prove it by my Sister *Clerimond*, for she hath a Head of Brass that telleth her the Adventures and Fortunes that to her and all her Generation shall befal; likewise, this Head shall continue speaking until such time as the most worthiest Knight of the World enter into the Chamber where it now standeth; and he being once entred, the said Head shall lose his vertue; and is the only Man to have my Sister *Clerimond* to Wife; wherefore fair *Knight* these things thus fallen out as you see, I greatly desire you would wed my Sister, as the most hardiest and most renownedst *Knight* in the whole World.

Chap. XV. *How* Orson *having Conquer'd the* Green-knight, Valentine *caused him to be Christened, and sending him to King* Pepin, *had knowledge of his Father and Mother by means of the* Green-knight. *How the same Night that* Orson *was made sure to the Lady* Fezon, *an Angel appeared unto* Valentine, *and of the Charge she gave unto him.*

THE *green-knight* having made this motion of the Marriage of his Sister, gave unto *Valentine* a Ring of Gold, upon condition that he would carry that Ring unto her: Which Ring *Valentine* accepted; and the *green-knight* yielded himself a Prisoner, and is now going towards *France*, to accomplish that Oath that he before had given him. *Valentine* having received this Ring, never rested till he had seen the Lady so commended to him. After this, the *green-knight*, by consent, was Crowned King of the Green Mountain, and there held great state: Presently upon his League of Friendship concluded, he gave command throughout all his Host, that every Man should depart away from the Confines of *Aquitain*, and return into their Countries without doing any further damage to Duke *Savary*'s Country. The Pagan Army thus dismissed, *Valentine* and *Orson* took and led him as a Prisoner into the City of *Aquitain*, whereat was no little Joy; and the Duke with all his Lords, Received him with great Triumph into the *City*. The *green-knight* being thus brought as a Prisoner to the Duke, began to say on this manner: My Lords, you owe much Honour

Honour unto the *Knight* that hath Conquered me. And further, *I* give you to underſtand for certain, that he can be no leſs than Son to a *King*; and alſo, that he never Sucked Womans Breaſt, for if he had, he could not have been my Conqueror, for ſo it was ever ſaid by the Brazen-head that ſtandeth in the Chamber of my Siſter *Clerimond*. Quoth the Duke, Well may this carry ſome likelihood of truth, for he hath born himſelf very Valiant againſt you; wherefore *I* think it my part to honour him with my utmoſt endeavours. By this time is the worthy train entered the Duke's Palace, whether the Duke commanded his Daughters preſence; and then he ſaid unto her, Daughter, behold here the *green-knight*, that hath for your love made ſpoil of my Country, and *I* was no way able to repel him back, but only by this valiant knight that *Valentine* hath brought from the Court of *King Pepin*, who hath freed us of our Fears: Wherefore this is my deſire, That as he hath Conquered your and my Enemy, ſo he may alſo Conquer your love, whereunto I willingly agree. The Duke having thus ſaid, the Lady anſwered for her ſelf in this manner: My Lord and Father, you know I am your Daughter, therefore there is no Reaſon I ſhould reſiſt, but do ſubmit to your Diſpoſe; for if I ſhould do otherwiſe, it were great diſobedience. And again, my Lord, your promiſe is already paſt, that whoſoever could Vanquiſh the Pagan Knight, ſhould for his labour receive me for his Wife. Now, my Lord, the day of my Deliverance is come, ſo then (according to your promiſe) you muſt give him to me, and I receive him as my lawful Spouſe; otherwiſe I ſhall make void the Edict before gone throughout the World, and you thought falſe in your promiſes. Daughter, quoth the Duke, you have ſpoken right Graciouſly, and your anſwer pleaſeth me highly, and not only me, but all that are about us; wherefore it were not amiſs to know of the Conqueror, whether he will have you: If he agree unto this Match, I ſhall give him in Dowry half my Country. Hereupon *Valentine* demanded of *Orſon* whether he would have the Lady *Fezon* to Wife? Who made ſigns, that he would never have any other. Then cauſed the Duke to be brought before him a Prieſt, who then contracted them, and ſo their time was paſſed with many diſports. Theſe things thus ended, *Orſon* made ſigns unto the Lady, that he would never lye with her till he had gotten the uſe of his Tongue, and that his Companion, *Valentine*, had Conquer'd the love of the Lady *Clerimond*. Of which you ſhall hear more hereafter.

The day being paſt with great Banquetings & ſolemnity, wherein *Fezon* was aſſured unto *Orſon*, the Night approached, and every Man betook *him*

to his Rest: Amongst the rest, *Valentine* and *Orson* were Lodged most Richly; and in the dead time of the Night *Valentine* had the Apparition of an Angel appeared unto him, saying, Valentine, *know this, that in the*

Morning thou speedily depart the Land, and take along with thee Orson, *by whom the* Green Knight *hath been Vanquished, and without further delay, get thee into the Castle of* Ferragus, *there you shall find the Lady* Clerimond, *by whom thou shalt understand of whence thou art Descended.* This strange Vision drove him into a thousand fears, and in great melancholly passed he away the Night: The day being broken, he caused *Orson* to arise, and being ready, they hasted unto the Duke's Palace, where he found his Barons attending for him, and amongst the rest, the *Green-knight*; not long after entred the Duke; being entred, the *Green-knight* took occasion to give him the time of the day, and began to speak unto him on this manner: Most Renowned Duke, I freely confess my self Vanquished, and withal, Renounce all right unto your Daughter, concluding an everlasting Peace with you, upon condition that you cause me to be Baptized. Knight, said the Duke, well have you said, I grant your Request. When the Priest was come that should Baptize him, *Valentine* began thus to say: Lords and Gentle-

me

men, May it please the Valiant Duke to grant me one Boon, which is this, That the Name of this Knight be call'd *Pepin*; it is the Name of the most mighty King of *France*, that nourished and fostred me even from my Cradle. The Duke consented unto *Valentine*'s demand, so he was called *Pepin*; After the Baptism, the Duke made motion to *Valentine* and *Orson* for to wed his Daughter, the beautious Lady *Fezon*; but *Valentine* not allowing thereof, made this excuse, that both he and *Orson* had vowed to go to *Jerusalem*, e'er they did attempt any other Action, after the conquest of the Green-knight. The Duke hearing this excuse, gave them leave upon this condition, That *Orson* should take an Oath to return again into *Aquitain*, at his coming back from thence, to this they both agreed. The same hour also, the Green knight took leave of the Duke of *Aquitain*, and went his way into *France*, to keep his promised faith to King *Pepin*: Before his departure, *Valentine* asked him for the Ring that he had promised; who gave it unto him, saying, Whatsoever he be that beareth this about him, shall never stand in fear of drowning, nor be afraid of false accusation. Then *Valentine* took the Ring and put it on his Finger; so *Orson* and he took leave, and departed the way towards the Lady *Clerimond*, to find out the Castle of *Ferragus*; and the Green knight likewise took leave for *France*. Much about this time *Blandiman*, Squire to the distressed Lady *Bellisant*, was arrived at King *Pepin*'s Court, clad in the Habit of a Pilgrim, and having saluted the King, he wondred at this his unlook'd for shape, and at last asked him from what Sepulchre he was come. Worthy King, said *Blandiman*, I am no Pilgrim, altho' I have taken that shape upon me, but only to come more safely unto you have I taken this habit: Wherefore know, that I am a Messenger sent from the high and mighty Lady your Sister, that by Treason and false Accusations hath been banished her Country by the Emperor *Alexander*, and at this time liveth in great sorrow of heart, only for that you have unjustly bent your heart against her, & sought no way to relieve her misery.

Chap. XVI. *How King* Pepin *came to know that* Valentine *&* Orson *were his Nephews; and how the* Green-Knight *submitted himself according to his Promise.*

Blandiman having delivered his message, the King began to demand where his Sister was; *Blandiman* replied, I know right well where she is, but I have given her my word never to discover it to any: But worthy King, if you doubt her loyalty, I shall bring you a Man that will fight

the Quarrel, to prove her honest. Nay, said the King, I have seen enough thereof already, by the downfal of the Arch-priest; also I have made much means to hear of her, but cannot: And, that which most grieveth me, is, that she was great with Child when she was banish'd; neither am I assured, whether she was delivered of that burden. My Lord, quoth *Blandiman*, know this for a truth, That my Lady laid her Great Belly in the Forrest of *Orleance*; and while she dispatched me to get her the help of a Woman: But e'er I could return, she was deliver'd of two Sons, the one of which was carryed away by a Bear into the Wood, she never wist whither; but she follow'd so long, till at last I found her in a swound upon the Ground: I coming to her, took her up, and comforted her so well as I could, till being somewhat Recovered, in woeful sighs she unfolded the manner of the loss of her Child; and for the other, she had left it under a Tree. I hearing her say so, hasted to the Tree whereas I left her, but being come thither, I could not find the other Child. And thus, worthy King, have I related the whole story of your Sister, and her two *Infants*. And other tydings have *I* none, but this, *I'm* that *Blandiman* that you gave to attend her, when she Married the Emperor. The King giving Ear unto this, said, Alas, *Blandiman*, thy words strikes me into a thousand fears: What should be become of my Sister? But seeing thou canst tell no more, tell me yet how long ago this is that thou hast told me. My Lord, quoth he, it was even that day you met me in the Forrest of *Orleance*, and *I* related to you the tydings of you Sisters Banishment. This struck the *King* into such admiration, that he began to recollect his Wits, & then presently came into his mind the finding of *Valentine*, and how by him *Orson* was Conquered in the same wood. Then he began to think on the story that *Biandiman* had told him, and thereby knew that these were the two Babes brought forth by his Sister; wherefore he sent for the Queen, and other Ladies, to let them understand what *Blandiman* had declared, saying, My Lords, *I* have long time Nourished and brought up in my Court a poor Child, and now it doth plainly appear he is Son to an Emperor, and my near kinsman: *Valentine*, whom *I* found in the Forrest, brought forth there by my Sister *Bellisant*, in the time of her Exile: and *Orson*, who was likewise Vanquished by *Valentine*, to be his Brother, and both Sons to the Emperor of *greece*.

At these tydings all the Court was joyful, save only *Haufray* and *Henry*, who in outward shew seemed glad, but were in their hearts sorrowful, for above all other they desired the death of *Valentine*, that next him they might work their wills on their young Brother *Charlemain*, against whom they chiefly

chiefly opposed themselves, as hereafter will appear. But to return to *Blandiman*, who hearing the King speak so much of the Children, demanded of the King, if he knew in what Country they were. Why, said the King, one of these I have brought up in my Court, in such fashion, that he is become a valiant Knight, and by his valour hath Conquer'd his Brother, being a Wild-man, living in the Wood like a Beast, and one that did much damage to the Country there-about: Having Conquered him, brought him to Court, where having lived some small time, they both departed, and took their way towards *Aquitain*, to fight with a worthy Champion, called the *green-knight*, and since their departure, I never heard what became of them. Sir, said *Blandiman*, according to the Tale you have told, I remember well, that near *Aquitain* I met two such, but I am troubled that I knew them not. So the King musing at these Accidents, caused *Blandiman* to be highly feasted, and held as a Companion amongst his other Lords.

Now it hapned, that on the same day the *green-knight* arrived at *Paris*, as soon as he came into the presence of the King, he saluted him with great Reverance. The King seeing him in Armour, marvelled thereat, and demanded the cause of his so appearing, whom he was, and wherefore he came: The *green-knight*, replyed again on this manner: Honourable King, know that I am descended from the Sarazens, both by Father and Mother; and true it is, that I am that knight, that for the love of the Lady *Fezon*, Daughter to the Duke of *Aquitain*, have for one whole year holden the Duke as my Vassal, and in my Subjection; and having him under me, I took a Truce with him for six Months, upon these conditions: That if within that time he found not forth a Knight that by force of arms should Conquer me, I was to have his fair Daughter *Fezon* to Wife. On the other side, If I were conquered, I should remove away my siege, and depart out of his Territories, without doing him any further damage. So it is, that long I was fought withal, by divers valiant Knights of all Countries, yet there was not any that could overcome me, but endureth death, and there still hangeth upon a Tree: At last it so fell out, that there assailed me two worthy Knights, the one named *Valentine*, and the other *Orson*: *Valentine* fought with me one whole day, wherein he bore himself so bravely, that Night coming on, we were forced to give over, all wounded, tyred, and weary: The next Morning when the Battle should be again renewed, his Fellow, *Orson*, armed in *Valentine*'s Armour, entred the Field in most fierce and disdainful manner, offering me defiance; I scorning any Competitor, addressed out my self against him; but little

my

my ſtrength, for in the end he overcame me, and would have taken away my life, had not *Valentine* come in upon us, and Reſcued me, upon theſe conditions, Firſt, That I ſhould forſake *Mahomet*. Secondly, That I ſhould come unto you, and yield my ſelf at your command, and to ſtand to your Cenſure, either in Life or Death Again, when I received Baptiſm, he cauſed me to be called *Pepin*, and ſo is my Name. The King having heard all this long ſtory from the Green Knight, made this anſwer, in the preſence of all his Barons: Welcome to us, and of your company we are right glad; live with us in our court, and be jocound, for *I* freely Grant you your life, and promiſe you further, That if you will tarry with us in our country, I will endow thee with many fair Lands and Poſſeſſions. The King ſhewing himſelf thus gracious, demanded of him where theſe Knights was, that had conquered him. Marry, quoth the Green Knight, *I* left them both at *Aquitain*, with the valiant Duke *Savary*, who holdeth them in great Reſpect as any that are Remaining in his Court. Thus you may now perceive, that by the words of *Blandiman* and the Green-knight, King *Pepin* had perfect intelligence of his beautious Siſter, and his two valiant Nephews. After all theſe tydings hapned, King *Pepin* made a Solemn vow, That he would go himſelf in Perſon into *greece*, to tell the Emperor of theſe gladſome tydings, and to take Order to ſend abroad into all Lands to find her out.

Chap. XVII. *How King* Pepin *departed from* France *towards* Greece, *to bear theſe Tydings; how he found* Conſtantinople *beſieged by the Souldan of* Egypt; *how the* Green-knight *Juſted with two* Sarazens *and overcame them, of the Battle that was fought, and the Armies entring the City.*

King Pepin put himſelf into a readineſs to depart into *greece*, went forth, and before much time was ſpent, arrived at *Rome*, where the Pope Received him joyfully; but as he was ſat at Dinner, News was brought him, That the Souldan of *Egypt*, with a mighty Army, had beſieged *Conſtantinople*; whereupon reſolving to go to the Relief of it, he craved aid of the Pope, who readily granted it, and Forces were immediately raiſed in all the Territories of the Church, who chearfully aſſembled themſelves under ſo couragious a General; and ſo King *Pepin* coming to *Conſtantinople*, he found the City round begirt, and the Citizens in great fear of the Souldan's Army, betaking themſelves to the City, keeping the ſame againſt all the force of the Pagans. The Emperor was cloſe confin'd

in

in the City, by Reason of the long continued siege, but when he heard relief was come, he took courage, and the Pagans were much Alarumed; but the Souldan with big words encouraged them, not only to subdue *Constantinople* but *Rome* it self, lessning and deriding the valour of the Christian Army. But King *Pepin* resolved to fight his way into the City, sent

letters to the Emperor to make a vigorous Sally, at such time as he should give the onset, and so march towards the Enemy. The Souldan, upon this, put his Men in order, to discover the number of his Enemies. The *Green-Knight*, who was advanced before the Christian Army, with the like intent on the other side, perceiving them coming by the side of the hill; and knowing them to be Enemies, addressed himself to the Encounter, and break his Launce against the foremost; then a dreadful combat began between them, and in fine killed one and put the other to flight. The King upon this good omen, charged the Souldans Battle with great Fury, wherein *Mylon Daugler* slew the King of *quile*, and three others, e'er he gave over the field: This made the Souldan and his choice men come

up, and furiously fet upon *Daugler*, who valiantly defended himself, till his Horse wounded fell under him: and there had been slain, but that the *Green Knight* rescued and remounted him: Then great was the slaughter on both sides, for the Emperor issuing out with his Army, the Infidels were in a manner hemmed in; and King *Pepin* pressing on, cryed, Courage, Noble Brother, and you shall have News of your Lady *Bellisant*: This made him encourage his men to the utmost, crying for *Constantinople*, which so heartned them, especially with his own and King *Pepin's* example, that they fought like Lyons. The *Green Knight* and other Champions made a terrible slaughter, so that the Sarazens began to fall in rout, and fly; but the King of *Scalvonia* coming in with 50000 fresh Men, restored the battel, which continued bloody and doubtful; but King *Pepin* and the Emperor finding they were over-numbred, and the Enemy had fresh succors, thought fit to retire into the City, which they did, and there, being close begirt with a siege, endured extream Famine, where we must lave them to follow *Valentine* and *Orson*, who for the love of *Clerimond*, have adventured as you have already heard.

Chap. XVIII. *How* Valentine *and* Orson *arrived at the strong Castle, wherein fair* Clerimond *was; and how, by the brazen-head, they had knowledge of their parents.*

After many days travel, at last *Valentine* and *Orson* lighted upon an Island, in which Island stood a Castle, strong and impregnable; the covering whereof was of shinning metal, glittering in the Sun, that it drove *Valentine* into suspition, that it was it, whereunto the Green Kt. had directed him to have a sight of the fair Lady *Clerimond*. At all adventures he maketh way towards the Castle, and at last entred into this Island by one of the ports thereof: Being entred, he demanded who was the owner of that Castle, which appeared so sumptuous to the eye? Answer was returned, That the Castle was in the keeping of the fair Lady *Clerimond*, Sister unto the Gyant *Ferragus*, and builded by a mighty man in substance, a Sarazen, the which Sarazen, amongst all other his excellent works done in this Castle, he caused one chamber to be richly adorn'd, of which Chamber more shall be spoken of in its place.

Moreover, it was told unto *Valentine*, amongst other things, that in the Chamber stood an Excellent Piller made by Art, upon the which stood a Head of Brass, composed along time before, by the Negromancy of a Fairy, the which Head was of such an excellent composition, that it gave answer

anſwer to any thing that was demanded: *Valentine* hearing this ſtrange Relation of the Caſtle, was right glad; for now he was verily perſwaded that this muſt needs be the very Caſtle he had ſo long time ſought, and wherein the *green knight*, told him he ſhould find his Siſter, ſo highly praiſed of all Nations for her Excellent beauty. Having gathered knowledge enough, he left queſtioning any further, and went on his way, accompanied with *Orſon*, to ſee if he could get entrance into this Caſtle. By this time they were come to the Gates thereof, where thinking to enter, they were reſiſted by ten ſturdy Knights, that kept the Gates night and day.

When they ſaw *Valentine* and *Orſon* make proffer to enter, they ſaid unto them: Lords, or whatever you be, with-draw your ſelves back, for into this Caſtle entereth none, of what birth ſoever, without the leave and licenſe of a Maiden, to whom we (as Guard) do appertain. Why? (quoth *Valentine*) go tell her, and ask whether it be her pleaſure we enter or not.

Hereupon one of them entered the Chamber where fair *Clerimond* was, and kneeling before her ſaid: Lady, at your Gate ſtandeth two Gallants that would enter your Caſtle; they ſeem fierce and couragious, full of high ſpi-

rit, and men far disagreeing from the laws and Religion of our Country: Now fair Lady, say, shall they have entrance? Descend (quoth the lady) while I go forth into a Window, to take a view of them, and let the Gates be surely kept, For I mean to question with them my self. The Porter did as she commanded. Then *Clerimond*, that was well languaged, leaned out of the Window, upon a Cushion covered with Gold, and said unto *Valentine*: what are you, that dare offer to enter my Castle without leave? Lady (quoth *Valentine*, with an undaunted courage) *I* am a Knight that travelleth this way, and would gladly speak with that head of Brass, that remaineth within this Castle, if it be your pleasure, because (as *I* understand) it Resolveth doubts. Knight (quoth the lady) upon these terms you may not enter; but if you can bring me any certain signs from one of my Brethren, either from K. *Ferragus*, or the *Green knight*, lord of *Tartary*, then you may Freely enter this castle, and by no other means: Yet you may enter, that is, by the Seneshal of this place, with whom you may Run six courses with your spear, to try your Valour; wherefore now be advised, either Fetch me some certain Tokens from one of my Brothers, or try your Fortune in single Combat, as *I* have told you. Lady, quoth *Valentine*, against your Seneshal *I* dare adventure, For *I* had rather win my entrance by pondrous blows, then by entreats and Fawning speeches. This choice chose *Valentine*, Rather than to bewray the Ring which he had brought along with him, given him by the *Green knight*, to present to his Sister *Clerimond*. The Lady seeing his Resolute hardiness, suddenly fell in love with him, and presently went into the chamber where the head of Brass stood, and said unto it: What is that Knight of Courage, that would so gladly enter this Castle? Lady, quoth the Head, of that *Knight* you shall know nothing, until such time as you have brought him before. me *Clerimond*, at this answer, seemed very sorrowful, for she was greatly in love with *Valentine*.

Chap. XIX. *How (when as* Valentine *was before the Castle, talking with the guard)* Clerimond *bewailed the Love of* Valentine: *And how he Justed for the Entrance, and over-came the Seneshal.*

CLerimond pondering in her mind the words of *Valentine*, being overcome with Affection, said on this manner: Ah! *Valentine* is valorous and beautiful; and if I have power over the Head of Brass, I shall never take other Husband than this *Knight*. Hereupon she sent for the Seneshal, and told him that this *Knight* would enter the Castle. The Seneshal

hereat enraged, began thus: Lady, if he be so hardy to attempt it, I shall quickly make him know that he cometh too late to gain your love.

Seneshal (said the Lady) since it must be so, go arm you presently, and so he departed to put himself in Arms; being Armed, he mounted his Horse, couched his spear in his rest, and withal Issued out of the Gate in Readiness. The Lady got into a Window to behold the combat. When *Valentine* saw the Seneshal to come toward him, he couched his spear, and put spurs to his Horse, they met so fiercely, that their spears break in pieces: presently having a new supply, suddenly they met so fiercely, that they fell to the ground Horse and man; but *Valentine's* Horse got up with his Master; *Valentine* being thus saved by his Horse, said unto the Seneshal: Rise up, and newly mount your self, for there is no honour in conquering an Enemy at Advantage. Whereupon the Seneshal was freshly

mounted, and new Spears given them again: then took they a fresh career, and therewithal *Valentine* so encountred him about the head, that he bore away his Helm, and threw both Horse and Man down upon the Earth: The Seneshal finding himself in danger, said thus unto *Valentine*, Knight, *I* know not from whence you are, nor of what Parentage, but never in

my life found I a man of thy valour, wherefore I yield, and withal give thee leave to enter this Castle at thy pleasure (only upon this condition, that you speak not unto the Lady *Clerimond* without my leave.) Quoth *Valentine*, thou hast requested that which I cannot grant, and know, it was for her love I came hither, and though I never saw her before, yet are my thoughts on fire. Therefore from hence I will never part till I have spoken with her, and also with the Brazen-head: The Lady all this while standing at the Window, wondred what conference passed between these two champions, and at last thus said unto one of her Maidens: see how indiscreet this Seneshal is, to fight with such a valiant Knight, who long since might have taken away his life. When *Valentine* saw the great pride of the Seneshal, and that he stood it out with him, being his Prisoner, he presently run against him another course, and therewithal gave him so deadly a stroak, that he ran him quite thro' the body, so that he fell off his horse stark dead; at which the Lady *Clerimond* was exceeding joyful, commanding them to set open the gates, and that *Valentine* should be brought up unto her in the great Hall: When that the Lady beheld *Valentine* well, she came towards him, and said unto him on this manner: Knight, you are most welcome, for I never saw a more valiant and couragious man all the days of my life: Enter my Castle, for it appeareth by your valour and chivalry, that you are descended from the loyns of some Royal Stock: Lady, know this for a certainty, my name is *Valentine*, a poor Adventurer, for neither my self, nor my companion, ever knew from what stock we descended: he was nourished by a beast in the Forrest, and lived there like a Wild-man, till as I conquered him by my sword, besides, he never spake in his life more than you see at this instant: Wherefore Lady, thus far have I travelled to get knowledge of my Parents, but chiefly to gain the Love of you, being so fair a Lady.

Chap. XX. *How* Valentine *shewed* Clerimond *her brothers Ring, which the* Green knight *gave him, and how he questioned with the brazen-head, which told him from whence he was descended.*

Valentine having purchased free entrance, by overcoming the Seneshal, at last he shewed the Ring that the *green knight* had given him, and smiling, delivered it to the Lady, who gladly received the Token, saying, Fair knight, had you shewed this Ring when you first craved access into this castle, you had never endured the danger that you have now escaped: But sith it hath pleased you to try your valour, I cannot, better commend you

you, than to admire your brave Couragious heart. Whilſt *Valentine* was alſo plac'd juſt againſt her, in whom ſhe took her great Felicity, as he in her: Dinner being ended, *Clerimond* aroſe from the Table, and taking *Valentine* by the hand, ſaid thus unto him: Sir, well have you purchaſed your welcome, deſerving to enter into my privieſt chamber, and ſo you ſhall, even that chamber wherein that brazen-head ſtandeth the which head ſhall declare all that you can deſire, and make no doubt but it will tell you moſt joyful tydings: Wherefore, both you and your companion come along with me, for i gladly long to hear, as you deſire to be heard. Hereat *Valentine* grew exceedingly joyful: Firſt, for that he ſhall now underſtand that which he now deſired to know: Secondly, that the Lady uſed him ſo graciouſly. Thus taking their way out of the Hall, ſhe brought him into that Chamber: Being come unto the door thereof, and thinking nothing, they found the chamber door Guarded on this manner: On the one ſide a grim, fearful and ugly ſhapen Villain, ſtrong and crooked, armed with a Club of Iron upon his Neck, which offered to make Reſiſtance: on the other ſide of the chamber door ſtood a moſt fierce Lyon, theſe two continually kept the door, that none could enter in without the Ladys leave, or elſe fight with the Villain and Lyon: *Valentine* perceiving theſe two Watchmen to make Reſiſtance, demanded of the fair Lady *Clerimond* the meaning thereof, who anſwered, Theſe two you ſee here are to keep the door, that none may enter without fighting with them, and that divers have periſhed in their preſumption: And again, the Lyon is of ſuch fierceneſs, that he will ſuffer none to paſs, unleſs the Son of a King, and to ſuch ſhe ſhews her ſelf very loving

Lady (quoth *Valentine*) happen what will, yet I mean to try my fortune with the Lyon, and by main ſtrength caught him about the body, whereat the Lyon forſook him, and let him paſs. *Orſon* likewiſe aſſailed the Villain, and e'er he could get ready to lift up his club of Iron, he took him by the middle ſo ſtrongly, that he threw him againſt the Wall; he took away his club, and gave him ſuch a blow, that he tumbled on the Ground, and had it not been for the Lady *Clerimond*, he had ſlain him in that place. Being both thus vanquiſhed, the Gates was opened, and they entred the chamber, wherein they might ſee all the World could afford, as Gold, Azure, Rubies, Saphires, with a great multitude of precious Stones: within this chamber was four pillars of jaſper, marvellous rich, of which two of them are Yellow as moſt fine Gold, and a third Green, more green than Graſs, a forth more red than a Flame of Fire; between theſe pillars was a precious Stone, called an Amery, more Rich than the heart of Man

can

can deviſe, in the midſt of which ſtood a head of braſs, ſet upon a Rich Pillar, *Valentine* wondring at the Riches of theſe Objects, fixed his Eyes only upon the Head, longing to hear what it would publickly open concerning his Birth, At length when every voice was ſilent, the Head began to ſpeak after this manner. 'Thou Famous Kt. of Royal Parentage, are 'called *Valentine* the *valient*, of whom it may juſtly be ſaid, there was 'never the like appeared before me; thou art the Man, who of Right ought 'to Marry with the Lady *Clerimond*, thou art Son to the Emperor of '*Greece*, and thy Mothers Name is *Belliſant*, Siſter to King *Pepin* of '*France*, who by wrong Suggeſtions is baniſhed her country and Huſ-'bands bed; know this, thy Mother is in *Portugal* in the caſtle of *Fer-'ragus*, who hath had the keeping of her theſe twenty Years: *Pepin* is 'thy Uncle, and the Wild man who hath ever accompanied thee, is thy 'Natural Brother; you two were delivered by the Empreſs *Belliſant*, in 'the Forreſt of *Orleance*, and being brought forth, thy companion was 'taken away by a Ravenous Bear, and by her he was Nouriſhed in that 'Wood, among the reſt of her Whelps, and never ſucked he any other: 'For thy part *Valentine*, thou waſt found the very ſame day in that Forreſt 'by King *Pepin*, who hath Nouriſhed thee tenderly, and brought thee up to 'Man's Eſtate: Further, thus much i ſhall alſo tell thee, that this thy 'Brother here preſent, ſhall never have the uſe of his Tongue, till a 'Thread be cut under the ſame, and then thou ſhalt here him ſpeak plainly. 'Therefore proceed as thou haſt begun, and thou ſhalt proſper, for my time 'is at a Period, ſith thou art come to enter into this chamber.

Valentine marking well all the head had uttered, fell upon the boſom of his brother *Orſon*, and *Orſon* on his, and with kind embraces they counterchanged each other. The Lady ſeeing all this, began thus to break out into ſpeeches: Alas, courteous *Knight*, I of all other ought moſt to joy at this your happy arrival, for by you I am Freed of ten years hearts grief, which I have hardly undergone hitherto. Again, by this Brazen-head I underſtand that you have ever been the Man on whom my Affections ſhould Reſt, and whereunto *I* gently agree (if you pleaſe) and take you for my wedded Lord.

Lady, quoth *Valentine*, *I* accept you as my Wife, who was given to me by your Brother the *green Knight*, that was vanquiſhed by my Brother *Orſon* before the City of *Aquitain*: only this *I* ſhall Requeſt. That as your Brother the *green Knight* hath forſaken *Mahomet*, ſo you would do the like. Sir, quoth ſhe, *I* ſhall gladly pleaſure you in any thing you ſhall command me, and be obedient to your will in every Point, whilſt you

and

and I shall live. And so great Joy betided all the Inhabitants of this castle, for they were Right Glad of the Tydings that the Brazen-head had declared unto him. After this, the Reputation of *Valentine* encreased more and more: But all his former joy and gladness was suddenly eclipsed by the Treachery of her Brother *Ferragus*, as hereafter shall be more fully be declared.

Chap. XXI. *How the Gyant* Ferragus *had knowledge of all that past between his Sister and* Valentine, *by the means of one* Pacolet *a Dwarf, and an enchanter.*

NOW shall you understand, that within this castle where *Clerimond* was, dwelt a *Dwarf* (named *Pacolet*) which the Lady had nourished and brought up of a child, bestowing much cost to have him taught in Schools. This *Pacolet* being of more age than Stature, grew exceeding witty, and at last studied the Black Art, and therein grew so famous in *Negromancy*, that by Enchantment, he had composed a little horse made of Wood; in the head of which horse, he had so Artificially conveyed a pin of Wood, that every time he mounted on his back to Ride abroad, he would turn the pin towards the place he would go unto, and suddenly he would be in the same place without danger; for the horse could Run through the Air swifter than any bird. This *Pacolet* being in the castle, observed the behaviour of *Valentine*, and when he had fit time, he addressed himself to *Portugal*, to bear news to *Ferragus*, how all matters had passed at the castle. So he betook himself to his Wooden horse, and in a moment of time (setting the pin for that part) he arrived there, according to his desired wish, and Related the story unto *Ferragus*. When *Ferragus* heard this tale, he grew exceeding Angry against *Valentine*, for that he should have his sister in Marriage: Also, he grew enraged at her, that she should grant her love unto him (being a Christian Knight) swearing by his gods to take Revenge upon them both: But all this he dissembled unto *Pacolet*, bidding him Return and bear this Message to *Clerimond*, that the Knight *Valentine*, who shall have her to Wife, is Right Welcome, and that e'er long I will come in Person to visit them, accompanied with a Gallant Troop of Nobles, and then shall their Nuptials be Royally Solemnized: So *Pacolet* took leave, and got him on his horse, and was in an Instant at home again. Being come, he presently went into the presence of the Lady *Clerimond*, and said unto her: Madam, I have been in *Portugal* with your Brother *Ferragus*, who is glad of your choice with *Valentine*, and pro-

miſeth e'er long to be here in perſon, and to make a Royal Marriage. At this tale the Lady ſtood amazed, and at laſt began to anſwer him thus: Ah *Pacolet*, is this true that thou haſt told? Aye me, the Gods defend my Brother from plotting any Treaſon againſt me, for I am well aſſured he could never abide a Knight of *France*, nor any other that is a Chriſtian; I am Right angry that thou didſt not acquaint me with thy departure, for I had a ſerious buſineſs for thee to do, which was to have enquired there for a Chriſtian Woman, one that of long time hath had her abiding with my Brother *Ferragus*, in the caſtle that he now holdeth.

Chap. XXII. *How* Pacolet *hereupon made another expeditious Journey into* Portugal, *to ſee the Lady* Belliſant, Valentine's *Mother; his returning back, and the News that he brought.*

THE Lady having ended her Tale, *Pacolet* made her this anſwer: Lady, ſeeing you are ſo earneſt, I ſhall for your ſake make another Journey into *Portugal*, and before to morrow mid-day, I ſhall bring you tydings whether ſhe be there or no. *Valentine* hearing him ſay ſo, Replied: That thou canſt not do, except the Devil be in thee: The Lady *Clerimond* ſaid unto

unto *Valentine*: let him alone, for by Art he hath provided, that he will Ride more than a thouſand Miles a day. Hereat *Valentine* marvelled much, and calling *Orſon* unto him, he cut the Tread from under his Tongue, that hindred his ſpeech, which being done, he ſpake preſently, where he Related the ſtory of his life led in the Forreſt, which held them the moſt part of that Evening. On the Morrow, according as *Pacolet* had promiſed, he was found in the Hall before *Valentine*, ſaying unto him on this manner: Sir, I am Returned from *Portugal*, and have ſeen your Mother in good health: Friend (quoth *Valentine*) thou art Right welcome, for it is ſhe only I deſire to hear off. love (quoth *Clerimond*) be not too haſty, For if my brother come not hither, we will go into *Portugal* to him, and then we ſhall have both our hearts deſire. Nay, ſurely, quoth *Pacolet*, your Brother will come hither: Ay, quoth the Lady, but I ſtand in fear of him, leſt that he work ſome Treaſon againſt us; for this laſt Night *I* Dreamed a Fearful Dream, at which I was very much affrighted, and thus it was: *I* Dreamed *I* was in a great water, in the which *I* ſhould have Periſhed, had it not been for a great Face that drew me out thereof; being out, methoughts *I* ſaw a Griffin iſſue out of a Cloud, who with his Tallons took me up, and carried me *I* know not whether, love, quoth *Valtine*, give no Reſpect at all to Dreams, for they are but Deluſions of a melancholly mind. 'Tis true, quoth ſhe, but they trouble me every night. Having ended this diſcourſe, they entred into a Fair Arbor, garniſhed with great varietys of flowers, Repoſing themſelves ſome few hours in long dalliance, where we will leave them; and you ſhall hear that the ſame day arrived *Ferragus*, the Taitor, at the Caſtle of *Clerimond*.

The Lady hearing of his coming, preſently went to welcome him, and he as kindly embraced her; and ſaid unto her; Siſter, above all Creatures living, I have moſt deſired to ſee you; tell me I pray you, which is the *Knight* you mean to make your Husband? This, fair Brother, is the Man. Whereupon *Valentine* ſaluted him with great Reverence. *Ferragus* ſaid unto him: Fair *Knight*, Ye be welcome into theſe Quarters, for the love of my Siſter *Clerimond*; for ſeeing it is ſo fallen out, that you have conquered my Brother the *Green-Knight*, and ſent him into *France* cauſing him to be Chriſten'd, even ſo have *I* a great deſire to be baptized, to become a Chriſtian, and follow your Religion.

Valentine believed all theſe words which he had ſpoken; but under theſe fair promiſes he ſmothered Treaſon; yet at laſt *Valentine* began thus to ſay unto him: Sir, it is Reported to me, that within your caſtle, for the ſpace of theſe twenty Years, you have maintained a Chriſtian Woman, who

is mother unto me, whom I would gladly see, her Name is *Bellisant*, Sister to King *Pepin* of *France*, and Wife unto the Emperor of *Greece*. By *Mahomet*, said *Ferragus*, you say truth, and to the end your Eyes may behold her, you shall go aleng with me into *Portugal*, so shall you Rightly be informed, whither she be the Lady you seek after or no; Gramercy, quoth *Valentine*, and so *Ferragus* left him, and said unto his Sister *Clerimond* after this manner: Sister, my souls Joy, I desire your Advancement more then any thing on earth, and am glad you have found out so worthy and valliant a Knight for your Espousal; wherefore to knit up all at once, my desire is, that you would go with me into *Portugal*, and there, with the consent and applause of all my Nobles, we intend highly to Solemnize your Nuptial-Day.

Chap. XXIII. *How* Valentine *and* Orson *were betrayed by the Treachery of* Ferragus; *and how he committed them to Prison, with their woeful Lamentation.*

Ferragus having thus gotten their good Wills to depart for *portugal*, put all his Ships in a Readiness, and packing up all their Provision, they put forth for Sea. Being now at Sea, *Ferragus* fell from all his former words of Comfort, and began to Plot the Death of *Valentine* and *Orson*. In the dead time of the Night, when the two Brethren were at Rest in their Cabins, he caused them secretly to be taken forth of their beds, and committed them to hands, muzling their Eyes also, that they could not see: Now when *Clerimond* saw what was done to her Love, she fell into an extream Agony, and with watery Eyes began thus to vent her Lamentations: Alas, dear *Valentine*, our Joys are suddenly turned unto Sorrow, thou hast bought my Love at too dear a Rate, when thou art not only thus misused, but even in danger of thy Life: Cursed be the day of my birth, for with much danger hast thou purchased my love. Alas, alas, what shall i do? wrent heart, weep forth my Eyes, when such a Valiant, hardy, and most magnanimous Knight must be thus Tortured for my sake: Thou hast deceived the trust I put in thee, by working so Foul an act against my Love: Thou hast Robbed me of all Joy, and brought upon me an untimely Death. Further, know this, that if you put to Death these two Knights, you carry to your Grave the name of a Villian. Let them alone, their death will work you small content: Or if there be no Remedy, spare them, and sieze first upon me, and cast me into the Sea, For I would not live to see two such Innocents falsly put to death without desert. Yea, even

even so much was the Lady perplexed, that with very hearts sorrow she would have Slain her self, or else violently have leaped over-board into the Sea.

Ferragus perceiving her in this desperate fit, gave strict command that she should well be attended by some of his Barons, and especially that she should not so much as speak a word with either of the prisoners; thus leaving her to her Laments, and the Christians, both *Valentine* and *Orson* fast bound in bands. *Valentine* perceiving himself thus betrayed, began thus to bemoan his hard hap: Alas, quoth he, how unkind hath Fortune dealt with me? I have spent all my Youth in travel and danger, only to find out the parents that begat me, and see now, when hope had well nigh set an end to all my sorrows, I am unhappily fallen into the hands of mine Enemies, that onely seek my death. Alas, Brother *Orson*, how suddenly are all our Joys blasted, and our mirth turned into mourning? On this wise complained *Valentine* and *Orson*, but all this while are they on their way towards *Portugal*, and shortly after arrived at the castle of *Ferragus*. Being there Arrived, tydings was brought to the Lady *Bellisant*, that two Christian Knights were come along with them as Prisoners, At which News she quickly left her Chamber, and came to have a sight of them: when she was come near unto them, and had well Re-viewed them, at last she said thus unto them: Children, quoth she, of what country be you, and where were you born? Lady, quoth *Valentine*, we be of *France*, and born not far from *Paris*: *Ferragus* perceiving the Lady to speak unto them, sharply Rebuked her, saying: Lady, leave your Questioning, for except they Renounce their Faith, they shall miserable end their Days in Prison: and therewithal called unto him a Jaylor, and committed them into a Dungeon, to be there kept only with Bread and Water. This misery was not sufficient, but more than that, certain churlish Sarazens standing by, smote these two children with their fists and staves.

After *Ferragus* had committed them, he got him up into his Palace, and called for his Sister *Clerimond* unto him; when she came before him, she could not forbear tears, which made him thus say unto her: Sister, leave weeping, for I swear by *Makomet*, you have two long doted upon the brazen-head, as well appeareth, in that you make your choice with one of the contrary Religion: But change your mind, for it is a shame that you should first take him to husband, that hath been the overthrow of our Brother the *Green-Knight*, next a christian, whom our Laws do abhor. Forbear (I say therefore) and be Ruled by my Direction, and I will Raise your fortunes, by Matching you to that puissant King of *Trompart*. Forget, I say, these

two French-men, for thou shalt see, I will make them shorter by the head. Brother, quoth *Clerimond*) it behoveth me to obey you; for I plainly see I must let go the thing *I* cannot have; for whereas force constraineth, fear hath little power, and necessity often preventeth Truth. These discourses finished, *Ferragus* departed with his Queen and other attendants, and entering the Great Hall, with very much honour & Reverence they received the Lady *Clerimond*, the Queen thus saying unto her: Sister, welcome, for I have long desired to have a sight of you. Lady (quoth *Clerimond*) I give you a Million of thanks, but know this, that I am Right heavy and sad for two Christian Knights that are come hither under colour of Friendship and love, brought over by my brother's fair promises, and now to be violently Handled, as to be thrown into a Dungeon, and also threatned to death. This Sister, even this, wounds my soul, and splitteth my very heart in sunder. Alas, Sister, pitty me, for one of these Knights should be my husband, amongst all men living, he is the comliest, valianteſt, and hardest Knight that liveth upon the face of the Earth. Again dear (dear Sister) by force of Arms hath he conquered his Foe, and won my love: Wherefore Lady pitty my distressed Estate, and let me see that Christian Lady which you so long have kept within this Castle. Sister (said the Queen) *I* shall gladly consent to your desire herein; and so bringing them together, the Lady *Bellisant* said thus unto her: Lady, what is your will with me? Speak on, for *I* would Gladly hear any thing you have to say. Then thus, *I* bring you joyful Tydings, and yet the end of my Tale will be as sorrowful as the beginning is joyful; know this, that *I* am not ignorant of your Estate and Dignity, for you are Sister to *Pepin* King of *France*, and Wife unto the Emperor of *Greece*, who wrongfully banished you his Country: Soon after your Exile, you were Delivered of two fair Sons in a Forrest, one of which was taken from you by a Bear, and the other you lost you know not how. All this is true. Nay Lady, your children are both Alive, and *I* can tell you where to find them. At these words *Bellisant* fell into a swound for Joy; *Clerimond* quickly Recovered her again, and then the Lady said unto her: Fair Damosel, how came all these things to your understanding? Then *Clerimond* Related the whole story; how *Ferragus* her brother by Subtilty and Treason had put them into a Dungeon. *Bellisant* hearing her two Children were imprisoned by *Ferragus*, made great lamentation, insomuch that the Wife of *Ferragus* entred the Hall, to understand the cause of their mournful clamours; *Clerimond* told the Queen all from point to point. Well, said the Queen, be appeased, and dissemble the cause from the King,

King, for if he have any knowledge thereof, it will make him Rather so much the worse, then better affected, either to them or you.

Chap. XXIV. *How* Pacolet, *the Dwarf, comforted the two Ladies.*

AS these three Ladies were conferring about this matter, into the Chamber came *Pacolet* the Dwarf, that was now come from his Wooden Horse. When *Clerimond* saw him, she wept bitterly, and said, Alas *Pacolet*, what Injury have I done unto thee, that thou shouldest thus rob me of all my Joys at once? For I am well assured that thou mightest have given me warning of all these miseries. Lady, quoth *Pacolet*, be not so highly displeased at me, for I protest I am Ignorant of all that hath betided you; but seeing you have began these bitter bickerings, I swear my Art shall utterly forsake me, but I will find a Remedy for you to avenge your self and to that purpose, I here vow all my service unto you and *Valentine*, while Life doth last. Friend (quoth the Lady *Bellisant*) if thou can'st but free my two children out of Prison, I shall acknowledge my self highly indebted to thee, and I will Recompence thy labours every way. Lady (quoth *Pacolet*) no more take you care, but comfort your self, and e'er long you shall well perceive my crafty work to take such effect by my Art, that you shall have cause to remember me while you have a day to live.

Chap. XXV. *How by Art* Pacolet *set free* Valentine *and* Orson *from the prison of* Ferragus, *and conducted them out of his confines, with their Mother and fair* Clerimond.

IT chanced that one day *Ferragus* made a great Feast for all his Nobles, which day they passed in such revelling and Mirth, that the night growing late, they all betook themselves to Rest. Being all at Rest, *Pacolet* was still watchful to give the Ladies content, and comeing to a great Tower, whose Gates were brass, and surely locked, by his Enchantment the Gates flew open, and he Entred thereinto. Anon he came unto the door of the Prison, where the Ladies two Sons lay bound, and as soon as he touched the door, the locks break, and flew open as before. The two Princes lying there in a dark Dungeon, and hearing the door open were greatly perplexed, for they looked for nothing but present death; and at last *Valentine* began to weep, but *Orson* said unto him: Take Courage Brother, for it behoveth us to prepare for death: And sith it is so, he, that first entereth here to lay hands upon me, shall dearly pay for his adventure: With that he laid hold of a great iron

Iron bar that lay thereby: But at last *Pacolet* speak unto them, saying, Lords, Fear me not, For i am come to set you free from forth this Dungeon, wherefore make no Noise, but follow me, and before the morrow Sun, I shall bring you both unto your Mother. *Valentine* at this speech rejoyced greatly, but *Orson* beholding him with an austure look, would not give any credit to his words. *Pacolet* at the fierce look of *Orson* was much astonished, insomuch that he gave back, but by the words of *Valentine* he was much recomforted, and *Orson's* Fury abated.

After this, *Pacolet* led them to the chamber whereas these two sorrowful Ladies sat in mournful Tears. When he came unto the door of the Chamber, it was fast locked, but he did easily open it. After they entered in, *Pacolet* so wrought with his Charms, that all that was thereabouts fell into a heavy and deep sleep, and knew nothing of their coming. Being in the Chamber where the two heavy ladys were, the two Sons went to their Mother, but she suddenly falling into a swound, speaking unto them never a word: But the Lady *Clerimond* pitiously said thus unto *Valentine*: Alas (fair Kt.) this is the mother that bare you, who for the love and Joy of you is fallen into this Extasie. Then *Valentine* embraced her, and took her up in his Arms; and *Orson* also clasped her about the middle, saying unto her, Sweet Mother, speak unto me, and then he kissed her tender Lips, but all this while she speak never a word, but at last they all three fell flat upon the Earth in a swound, and there lay panting for breath along season, while the fair Lady *Clerimond* stood over them, bewailing this strange Accident: At last coming to themselves again, the Mother said unto them weeping: Alas, my Children, for your sakes have i suffered more pain and anguish then ever poor Woman was able to undergo, and you two the only cause of these my dolorous passions, but sith the Gods have so ordained, that I may once see you, and Embrace you before my death, all my griefs are vanquished, and become no burden unto me: But tell me, how you have been preserved ever since your birth, and in what country, and with whom have you Remained! For it would glad me to hear the Event thereof. At last, she having ended her words, *Valentine* began the pitious Story of all their miseries, even to that present hour. *Valentine* having finished his sad tale, by which the Empress *Bellisant* clearly knew that they were both her Natural Children, wailing with many more Tears then before, she was like to have fallen into a swound again, but *Pacolet* prevented her, who was at that instant in the Chamber, saying unto her: §Lady, leave these laments, and let us think how we may depart from *Portugal*, and so Rid us out of the subjection of King *Ferragus*. Alas, said *Clerimond*, my love Remember

member the Oath that you have made unto me, to make me your Wife. Dear Lady (quoth *Valentine*) what I have promised I will perform, but at this present, the love I owe unto this my Mother, toucheth me near the heart.

These words of *Valentine* being ended, *Orson* said unto *Pacolet*, Go open me the door of *Ferragus*, and with these hands I shall work his final downfal and overthrow. *Pacolet* answered, Come, go along with me, and I shall glady open it to fulfil this your desire. But know this, if you Murther him, you shall lose the love of my Brother the *Green knight*, who may divers and sundry ways do us displeasure. Quoth *Valentine*, you say truth, and I agree unto this your wise and good motion, for I would not have you guilty of such a Crime, as the death of this your brother, for to gain the whole World.

At this very hour they departed the City, and *Pacolet* opened the Gates before them, and they followed him down to one of the Ports of the Sea, where he had appointed for them a ship ready Rigged, and having a fair Gale of Wind, they speedily arrived at the Castle of *Clerimond*: whither being once come, they refreshed themselves with Pleasures.

Chap. XXVI, *How* Valentine *and* Orson *escaped the Castle of* Ferragus, *and sailed with the two Ladies into* Aquitain.

Valentine being come, and safely Arrived at the Castle of *Clerimond*, could not so content himself therewith, but still grew more and more doubtful of *Ferragus*, fearing lest he should follow them, and put them into fresh dangers. Therefore to prevent all occasions of Further Mischief, he got him down unto one of the ports, causing the Marriners there present to victual their ships afresh, and also provide good store of Munition to be in readiness upon all occasions. Having thus done, he Returned again unto the Castle without any suspicion: Being come, at last he began thus unto his Mother *Belliſant*, and the Lady *Clerimond*, saying, That he would suddenly depart from *Greece*, towards *Constantinople*, to see his Father the Emperor, who, without any just cause, had banish'd his Mother. To this agreed both the Ladies, with *Orson* and *Pacolet*.

The next day they took Shipping and went on their Voyage, and at break of day, the Jaylor(according to his accustomed manner) went to the Tower to visit the prisoners, and to bear them their Allowance of Bread and Water. Coming unto the Gates, he found them all open, and the prisoners gone; he suddenly returned to the King, and said unto him: Great King,

Mercy, for this Night I have loſt the two Chriſtian Knights that you had delivered to Priſon: He had no ſooner done ſpeaking, but another Meſſenger appeared, and ſaid: O King, a greater miſchief than this has likewiſe happen'd this Night, for the Chriſtian Woman whom you have kept ſo many Years, is this Night eſcaped away, and hath carry'd along with her your Siſter *Clerimond*. *Ferragus* underſtanding theſe harſh tydings, all enraged, began to tear his hair, that he was as a mad Man amongſt his Barons, and ſuddenly cauſing them to be armed, he made them to purſue and follow them: So he betaking himſelf to his Club, Iſſued out the foremoſt.

He was a mighty Man, who was in Stature about thirteen Foot in Height. Being out of the town, he calling his Men about him, went forward to follow them that were Eſcaped, letting none paſs he met withal, but he demanded tidings of them, yet he could not hear of them; for *Pacolet* by his Art was too ſubtile for *Ferragus*. At laſt being tired with purſuit, he ſwore that he would beſiege the Caſtle of *Clerimond*, for he did think aſſuredly to find her there, but all in vain, for they had been there, but they were departed before his coming. Thus Enraged, he ſwore by *Mahomet*, that he would either find *Clerimond*, and all her Company, or elſe he would ſhake all *Chriſtendom*, and ſo departed the Caſtle.

Chap. XXVII. *How King* Ferragus *aſſembled all his Men of War, to take Revenge upon* Valentine, *and his Siſter* Clerimond, *and how he followed them into* Aquitain.

WHen *Ferragus* had long laboured, & could hear no tidings of the Chriſtians, and his Siſter *Clerimond*, he was grieved, and in his Fury ſent for all his Men of War on every ſide, preſently to aſſemble themſelves to take Sea, and follow *Valentine*, to try if they could find him, and bring him back again. But when they had ſpent many daies, and effected nothing, they returned every man to his Home, and reſted from their fruitleſs toil. Whilſt *Ferragus* and his Forces were thus ſcowring the flowing Seas, *Valentine* and *Orſon* were entered the City of *Aquitain*: Being there, they diſſembled their Eſtate, and as private Perſons, Lodged in a Houſe of a Burgeſs of the Town. *Valentine* would gladly have gone into the Palace of Duke *Savary*, but *Orſon*, thereunto would not agree, for he having a further reach of Policy, ſaid thus unto him: Brother, I find by ſmall Experience, that Women are Unconſtant, therefore hearken to my Advice, let us only ſee and try how the Lady *Fezon* ſtandeth Affected towards me, & herein

we shall try her constancy. Brother, quoth *Valentine*, I shall Right willingly agree hereto. Then *Orson* took upon him the habit of a Knight Errant, and entered the great Hall, taking *Pacolet* the Dwarf for his Page. When he was come before the Duke, he saluted him with all Reverence. The Duke observing well his behaviour, took him to be *Orson* that thus demeaned himself, but after finding by his Speech he was like to be deceived, he said: Great Duke, I am a Knight Errant, and one who would gladly Adventure to do you service in any manner you will imploy me. Knight (quoth the Duke) I accept your proffered Service, and will give you Sallery enough to content you, insomuch that if you will not depart my service before I give you leave, I shall give you such Riches, that all the stock you came from, could never Raise. Thanks, great Duke, qd. *Orson*, for your Liberal Heart, and I here Vow e'er I depart, to deserve your Love and Liberality.

Hereupon the *Duke* Requested him to visit his *Court*, and in lieu of his good will, he allowed him in present pay one Hundred and Fifty Pounds, making him withal a companion for the *Court*. *Orson* thus preferred by the *Duke*, behaved himself worthy of his preferment, and ever so carried himself at meat, that every Man delighted in his company. Amongst the Rest, the fair Lady *Fezon*, that was sworn his Wife, grew wondrous heavy and sad, but she knew not why, for she knew not that it was *Orson*, whom she had beheld; and thus passed forth the dinner time. Dinner being done, *Orson* took his leave for that time, and returned to his Lodging, where his Mother and the Lady *Clerimond* had taken up their Residence. *Orson* being come unto the place where the Ladies lay, he Related to them the whole passage between him and the *Duke*, which when they heard, they much Rejoyced thereat; but this Joy lasted not long, for there came sudden News, that *Ferragus* had sent Messengers to the *Duke* of *Aquitain* to proclaim open Wars against him.

The Duke hearing this unwelcome News, presently provided both Men and Provision, to Resist so proud an Enemy. *Ferragus* according to his purpose, suddenly arrived before *Aquitain*, even in the very same place, whereas his Brother the *Green-knight* had pitched Pavillions, when that *Orson* became his vanquisher; by this means much hurt Redounded unto the *Country*, and Provinces thereabout, whereas the Sarazens Army lay in Readiness, thinking by this their long and tedious continuance, to subdue, and over run the whole *Country* before them.

Ferragus still resolving upon this imagination (mark what followed) the worthy *Duke* of *Aquitain*, being of a Magnanimous *Courage*, assembled all

his Men of War, and being thus put in a readiness, he suddenly issued out of the Town, venturing to raise the Siege. Amongst the rest, *Valentine* and *Orson* made their appearance, being also accompanied with little *Pacolet*, but these three were not known unto any that at time: Where we will now leave them a little, to hear what followeth.

Chap. XXVIII. *How the Duke of* Aquitain *was taken Prisoner in the Battle by* Ferragus, *and how* Orson *set him free by the help of* Pacolet.

THE Duke of *Aquitain* calling to mind the huge Army of the Sarazens that lay before the City, valiantly resolved to give them present battle the next morrow, so calling up all his forces, and placing them in a Readiness, there happened a bloody Battel before the City of *Aquitain*, and many a brave Leader on both parts there lost their lives. The Gyant *Ferragus* himself was amongst the thickest, gathering himself as near as he could unto the standard bearer. The chief men slain in this battel, were six valiant Knights, that is to say, *Baudumain*, *Bondry*, *William Galeram*, *Anthony* the good Marshal, and *Gloriain* the hardy; all near about the Duke of *Aquitain*, and they that had the chief command throughout his camp. This happening, the christians were forced to fall back, whereby the Duke himself was begirt with Enemies, so that none might come to Succour him; yet in the midst of these dangers, he bare himself most valiant, and still cryed, *Aquitian*, *Aquitain*. my Noble hearts fight on for *Aquitain*; but in the end, all little availed, *Ferragus* having once gotten a sight of him, came near, and at last took him Prisoner, and led him to his Pavilion. *Ferragus* having thus bestowed the Duke, came up again to the Battel, which struck such an amazement into the hearts of the christians, that they would have forsaken the Field, especially, because they had lost the Duke, their Lord and Master. *Valentine* and *Orson* seeing them thus to waver, came to them with all the speed they could, and cryed to them with a loud voice: Valiant and Men of *Aquitain*, shew your selves Men, Run not away in time of Extremity, for if you do, lamentable will be your Reproach, be hardy and couragious; once again let us try the Fortune of the day.

These two Knights having thus done speaking, the people began afresh to gather up their scattered Forces, and turned them once more on the Sarazens, with a doudle courage. By this time Tydings was brought into the city, that the Duke was taken Prisoner, at which ill News the Lady *Fezon* lamented more than all the Rest; saying with a heavy heart, shed-

ding

ding Tears: Alas my Father! now is your life in hazard, for from these Sarazens there is no hope of any mercy. Farewel sweet Father (quoth she) I shall never hereafter see you again, but shall be here left a dejected Orphan. Alass *Orson*, my Love, thy long and tedious staying abroad doth much distemper me, for if you were here present, there would be some hope to gain my Fathers freedom.

Valentine all this while is amongst the thickest, hewing forth his way with his sword. *Orson* on the other side was not Idle, for he had taken an Oath that he would free the Duke from captivity, or leave his body amongst the Rest. *Pacolet* the Magician and Dwarf, promised *Orson* aid and assistance at need; and thus all busied and nigh hand wearied, *Orson* put spurs to his horse, and ran violently throw the Battel, and escaped: *Orson* and *Pacolet* being past danger, hurled away their own shields, and hanging about their necks the shields of the *Sarazens*, set forth with the Image of *Mahomet* in them, and by this subtilty they passed quite throw the camp of the *Pagans*, for *Pacolet* could speak their Language Right well. Now are they come unto the Pavilion of *Ferragus*, where the Duke lay in bands, thinking to have Released him: But *Pacolet* perceiving the Number of his Guard to be two mighty for them, he suddenly cast them all by his charms into a deadly sleep: Being thus made fast, he came unto the Duke and said unto him: Come with us presently, mount this horse, for we are come to set you free from the power of *Ferragus*; if you doubt what i am, I am the Knight which in your hall demanded Wages of you, and you allowed me liberally. Stand no longer to question me, neither fear the power of all the Pagans here assembled, for I will surely be your Guide thro' the Wicked Rout. Knight, quoth the Duke, you are a welcome Man to my distressed hands, and therefore for your dangerous Enterprize, in working my deliverance, I shall give you my fair daughter *Fezon* in Marriage. Indeed (I must confess) I had given her not long to a Knight, but he was wild and Savage, and he never had the use of his Tongue, but by reason of his long absence, I fear he hath won some other Lady, and left my daughter husbandless; but to be short, take her for this thy Noble Act, and with her I freely give the half of my Dukedom, Thanks, quoth the Knight, such a gift is not to be Refused; but let that pass, and let us make Ready for our Escape, that we may Return unto our discomforted Forces. Having thus said, they all three took their way back again throw the Camp of the Enemy, without disturbance; all this while was *Valentine* in the Army, demanding what was become of his Brother *Orson*, but he found no Man could tell him any Tydings of him, he grew

wondrous heavy and sad, fearing very much that he had been slain in the conflict of the Battle.

Thus passed *Valentine* from place to place, to find out his Brother *Orson*, and with a Resolute mind Rushed afresh into the battle, and as a Man distracted, he laid so forcibly about him, that not a Pagan was able to stand before him: *Ferragus* espying him so valiant, came up to close him, and having gotten him once in chase, never left him, until he had slain his horse under him.

Valentine having thus lost his horse, *Ferragus* seized on him as his Prisoner, causing him to be bound hand & foot, taking an Oath by *Mahomet*; that he should not escape from Death, though there were not a Man more to be had throughout the whole Land; but this Oath was broaken, for as he was leading his Prisoner *Valentine* fast bound along the Field, *Orson*, *Pacolet*, and the Duke of *Aquitain* set upon him, *Orson* crying out, Let him not escape us; and therewithal put spurs to his horse, and ran so fiercely against the Pagan *Ferragus*, that both he and *Valentine*, his Prisoner, fell to the Earth; the Gyant *Ferragus* quickly regained his feet, and left *Valentine*, who fearing, began to Run away. *Orson* espying him, cryed out, Brother, Return again, and fear nothing; hereupon *Valentine* was new mounted: When the Christians saw the Duke again at liberty, their courages again increased, their forces doubled, and with joy of heart they cryed out aloud; *Long Live the Duke of* Aquitain. This sudden Noise much amazed the *Sarazens*, insomuch that *Ferragus* was glad to flee, and Raise his Siege: When the Men of *Aquitain* heard the Retreat, they Recovered themselves again into the *City*. The Battle being thus ended, *Valentine* and *Pacolet* Returned to their Lodging; but *Orson* went along with the Duke to his pallace, whether being come, he called before him all his Nobles, and his Daughter *Fezon*; being all Assembled, he called *Orson* unto him, demanding of him his Name: Sir, quoth he, I am called *Gregory*. Then said the Duke thus before them all, Lords, I give you to understand, that above all Men living, I am the most beholding to this Knight, both for my life and liberty. And as for you Daughter *Fezon*, it is my pleasure, that above all Men, you accept this Knight for your Husband; Daughter, you have good cause to love him well, for by him I am made a living Father unto you.

The Nobles there assembled agreed willingly hereunto, affirming that she should do no less than to submit to her Fathers Will, and the rather considering the dangers that by him had been prevented: *Orson* hearing all this, still concealed himself, till he had further assayed the Constancy of

the

the Lady *Fezon*, acquainting his Brother *Valentine* what he had purpoſed to do, as enſueth in the next Chapter.

Chap. XXIX. *How* Orſon *tryed the Conſtancy of the Lady* Fezon, *before he Married her.*

Orſon having a deſire to try the Conſtancy of *Fezon*, at laſt Replyed thus unto the Duke: Sir, for the Honour you have vouchſafed me, I Reſt ever thankful for the ſame; but for your Daughter, it were moſt requiſite that I ſhould ſee how ſhe ſtands affected towards me, and likewiſe fit for her to make choice of ſuch a Man as is of equal Birth with hers; and therefore if it pleaſe you, let her anſwer for her ſelf. With theſe Words he entred into the Chamber of fair *Fezon*, and ſetting down by her, he took her by the hand, and ſaid unto her: Lady, your beauty hath ſo enlarged my heart, that without your favour and love, I am an unfortunate Man: Your Father is willing that I ſhall enjoy you, if you pleaſe ſo alſo, then may I juſtly vaunt, that I have won the faireſt Lady living, and will prove a conſtant Knight whilſt I have breath; if you conſent to this, let us embrace each other. Knight, (quoth the Lady,) you ought to forbear, for all your labour is loſt: it is true, I love all Knights, yea, all good Men too, in the rule of honour; but as for him whom I intend to make my Husband, him will I never change, nor yet forget. Why? But fair Lady (quoth *Orſon*) that which your Royal Father hath provided for you, ought to pleaſe you; Sir (ſaid ſhe) it is Reaſon that I obey my Father, but if ſo be that my Father will conſtrain me to break my faith, and forſake him that vanquiſhed the *green-knight*, I will rather leave my Father, than once offer to break my Faith. Lady (quoth *Orſon*) I wonder how you can ſet your affections on ſuch a Man, for he is of a Wild nature and diſpoſition; beſides as your Father Reporteth, is dumb, and cannot ſpeak a word. True (quoth the Lady) yet love learneth me to love him with a faithful affection, to whom my faith is already fixed; and therefore ſtay your Suit, for I will never alter, nor change my mind from him.

Orſon hereat grew wondrous Joyful, to hear the wiſe anſwer of *Fezon*, & took his leave of her; and came again to the Duke, ſaying, Great Duke, I am Returned from your Daughter, for ſhe hath given me an utter denyal, ſaying; that ſhe will never have no other Husband than he that conquered the *green-knight*. Quoth the Duke, care not for her denyal, for ſhe ſhall not Rule her own will, but be you a little patient this day, and I will talk with her my ſelf. Thanks mighty Duke (quoth he) I am much beholding

unto

unto you, and so left the Court, and came to the Lodging of his Brother *Valentine*, to whom he Related the whole matter of his proceedings with the Lady *Fezon*. Brother (said *Valentine*) you now know and find her faithful; but let us go together to the Palace, for I am assured the Duke will give me good entertainment. Brother (said *Orson*) do as you please: *Valentine* clad himself in Rich Apparel, and *Orson* put on nothing but the Jacket in which he first entred into *Aquitain*, and thus, accompanied with *Pacolet*, they went towards the Palace; and as they came into the great Hall, they found the Duke conferring with his Daughter, in the presence of his Nobles, saying thus unto her: Daughter, what moveth you to Neglect my command thus, in Rejecting the Knight, of whose love I have made sufficient Tryal, for he hath saved my life? Father (quoth the Maiden) I pray you to Solicite me no Farther in this matter, seeing you know assuredly that I have given my promise to him that vanquished the *Green Knight*: What greater shame can there be than to break my promise which I have made already? If by you I am constrained, the danger light upon you, and let me be innocent. As they were thus discoursing, the Duke espyed *Valentine* and *Orson* coming towards him, whom he embraced and honourably entreated, *Orson* having saluted the Duke, passed towards the Lady *Fezon*, who Received him with a smiling countenance, and said unto him: You are welcome above all others, your long absence hath greatly grieved me, and had you not now come in as you did, my Father had bestowed me upon another Knight. Love (quoth *Orson*) I have learned to speak since I was with you last, and am the very same Man that Yesterday Courted you in your Chamber: All which pleased the Lady exceedingly. So *Orson* went into the Chamber, and put on Rich Apparel: Being thus attired, he entered the Hall. The Duke hearing of his coming embraced him kindly, and said Son, pardon my Rashness, in that I would have given away thy love to another, for I was fully perswaded that thou wouldest never have Returned. Sir, quoth *Orson*, *I* forgive you. Then the Duke demanded how, and where they had spent their time, since their departure? *Orson* told him their whole Progress, and what dangers they escaped, and withal, how they two were the Sons of the Emperor of *Constantinople*, and *Bellisant*, Sister to King *Pepin* of *France*, whom they had lately Found in *Portugal*. The Duke hearing that their decent was of Royal Blood, was Right glad thereat, and said: You are worthy of all Honour by Reason of your Birth, but *I* am sorry that your Father the Emperor, and your Uncle King *Pepin*, are so hardly besieged by the *Sarazens*, and that unless speedy Aid he sent unto them, they will be forced to yield them-

themſelves. *Valentine* giving good Ear unto this Relation, grew exceeding ſad, but *Pacolet* at laſt put him ſomewhat out of his dumps, and ſaid Leave off your ſorrowing, for e'er to morrow night I ſhall ſend you to *Conſtantinople*. But (quoth *Valentine*) it muſt be then by the Devils means. Sir, ſaid *Pacolet*, mount you upon my Wooden Horſe, and try the event that will follow after. *Valentine* anſwered, that will I do, for I deſire nothing ſo much as the ſight of my Father, whom I never ſaw. *Valentine* on the morrow prepared to depart: But before his departure, the Duke Married his Daughter unto *Orſon*, in the preſence of the Lady *Beliſſant*, and the Lady *Clerimond*, with the conſent of his Nobles that were at the Wedding, where there was great Triumphs: And in this Aſſembly there was a Spy, who obſerved all the proceedings, and gave Intelligence thereof unto *Ferragus*. When *Ferragus* had Received theſe Tidings, he vowed by *Mahomet* to be Revenged on them all, but eſpecially on *Pacolet*, for ſtealing away his Siſter *Clerimond*, whom he ſo much loved, and Ranked her among the Chriſtians.

Chap. XXX. *How* Ferragus *the* Gyant *ſtrenthened his forces by the Aid of King* Trompart, *and the Enchanter* Adrimain.

Ferragus being out of hope to get Revenge on the two Knights, and his Siſter *Clerimond*, called unto him a Meſſenger, and delivered to him divers Letters of State, eſpecially one of them was to King *Trompart*, of whom he deſired Aid againſt his Enemies; all which, if he could ſeedily accompliſh, he would give unto him for his Wife, his Siſter *Clerimond*. At the farewel of his Letter, he deſired him to bring along with him the Enchanter *Adrimain*. Here leave we the Gyant, and Return to *Valentine*, who by this time is taking his leave for *Conſtantinople*. But in the end he ſaid thus unto the Duke, and *Orſon* his Brother: Lords, with you I leave my lovely *Clerimond*. *Valentine*, quoth the Duke, take you no thought for her, for I ſhall have a Fatherly Eye over her, as well as I have over my Daughter *Fezon*.

Valentine having taken leave, at laſt came to *Clerimond*, who, loath to part with him, wept bitterly, whereby he was forced to leave her, and turning him to his Brother *Orſon*, ſaid thus, Brother, commend me to my Father the Emperor, and to my Uncle King *Pepin*, and tell them e'er long I will viſit them. Brother (quoth *Valentine*) I ſhall Remember you, and ſo departed. *Orſon* ſtill Remained in the Palace, but *Valentine* had a duty yet more to do; namely, to take his leave of his Mother: But when

ſhe claſped him Round with her Arms, but was not able to ſpeak: *Valentine* perceiving her Natural Affection, Re-comforted her in the beſt manner he could, but all was in vain.

Chap. XXXI. *Of the pittiful Tale the Empreſs made to* Valentine *her Son, before his farewel into* Conſtantinople, *and what Speeches paſſed between him, his Father, and his Uncle.*

Valentine being overcome with the lamentations of his Mother, at laſt ſaid thus unto her: O Mother, leave off, be not ſo careful of me, for if I eſcape danger, I ſhall gladly ſee you here again; in the mean ſpace take care of my fair *Clerimond*, and let her be aſſured of my loyalty towards her. Alas, my Son, now will it come to light that I have been baſely and falſly baniſhed my Husbands Bed and Country, but yet do thus much for me, commend me to the Emperor, and alſo to my Brother King *Pepin*, and ſay unto them in my behalf, that I am an innocent Lady. Moreover, if there be ſuch a Man breathing, that will but once open his Mouth to the contrary, Fight thou for me, and juſtly maintain my unſpotted Chaſtity. Mother (quoth *Valentine*) all this, and more, I ſhall perform, and e'er many months have run their courſe, I ſhall cauſe my Father to Receive you again, and ask you pardon for his Raſh proceedings. So now he takes his laſt farewel of his dear Mother, with this charge, that ſo ſoon as they were arrived, he ſhould ſend *Pacolet* to bring tydings of all that had happened.

Now taketh he his way to the lodging of *Pacolet*, whither being come, *Pacolet* made ready his Wooden horſe, and mounting *Valentine* behind him, turned the Pin the ſame way he would take, and ſuddenly they were mounted in the Air ſo ſwiftly, that e'er the morrow at noon, they were in the ſight of *Conſtantinople*. *Valentine* was wondrous joyful, that he was ſo near the place he ſo much deſired to ſee, and by the help of *Pacolet* the Enchanter, came that Night to the Great hall, where the Emperor accompanied with King *Pepin*, ſat both at Supper. *Valentine* being come into ſuch an unknown preſence, grew very baſhful, but the *green-knight* ſitting at the Table, with the Emperor and *King Pepin*, eſpyed *Valentine*, & knew him, ſo did King *Pepin* take knowledge of him likewiſe, ſaying thus unto the Emperor, Great Emperor, behold here one of our own Blood, a valiant Knight, and your own natural Son. The Emperor hearing this, was much amazed, and Riſing from the Table, made towards him and kiſſed him: The *green-knight* was the firſt that took him in his Arms, and embraced

braced him, then King *Pepin* next, and lastly the Emperor his Father, who was greatly ashamed at his fact, in Banishing his unspotted & guiltless Wife.

It chanced so likewise, that in this presence was her old servant *Blandiman*, who well observed *Pacolet*, ever since he saw him in *Portugal*, and at last went he unto him, demanding how it fared with his old Lady and Mistress, the Lady *Beltisant*: *Pacolet* satisfied him in all his demands, so that exceeding great Joy and Gladness was heard about the City for the life of *Valentine*, and people came from all parts to behold the Emperor's Son, the valiant Knight. *Valentine* seeing such continual Recourse of all estates gathering about him, he said unto them: Lords, Knights, and Barons here assembled, who seem well pleased to behold my Person, I cannot yield unto you any other Recompence but thanks, and especially to my Uncle King *Pepin*, who hath ever fostered me, even from my Cradle; and had it not been for him, I had perished, by reason of a sharp Edict published by my Father, who by the false suggestion of a Dead Traytor, banished my Mother from his Bed and Country. Wherefore to clear her Innocency, I (as her Natural Son) offer my body in Combat against any false Traytor whatsoever.

Chap. XXXII. *How* Valentine *and the* Green Knight *were taken prisoners in the Battel of* Constantinople, *by the Souldan* Moradin *and his Men.*

WHen the Emperor perceived his Son to be so much moved for the dishonour which was done unto his Mother the Empress, he wept for very Grief of heart, and said thus unto his Son: My Son, I have no doubt of thee to be my Son, neither of thy Manhood, in offering to Revenge her wrongs upon the Traytor that Accused her, but he is fallen already by the Sword of a Merchant, in the presence of thy Uncle *Pepin*, my self, and divers others of high Estate. At his Death he confessed the whole Treason wrought against her, and since that time I have sent divers and sundry Messengers into all Nations, to hear Tidings what is become of her, but all in vain, for I cannot obtain my desired wish: Therefore I pray thee (if thou canst) tell me some Glad Tidings of her. Father (quoth *Valentine*) I know somewhat, for Yester-night I both saw her, and speak with her in *Aquitain*; telling him besides, that *Pacolet* the Enchanter had suddenly brought him thither by Art, rather than good speed. The Emperor hearing such Gladsome News from his Son, caused great Triumphs

throughout the City of *Conſtantinople*. When the *Sarazens* heard ſuch ſhouts and revelling within the City, they were greatly amazed, and every one put himſelf in a Readineſs. The Souldan round begirt *Conſtantinople*, famiſhing up all the Inhabitants moſt lamentable to behold. At laſt theſe tydings came to the Ears of *Valentine*, and the *green-knight*, who arming themſelves, came into the City, and ſaid; Lords, you well perceive the extremity in which we are in; be yet couragious and ſtand to it, and there is hopes of Recovery, wherefore follow my Counſel, Iſſue forth ſome number of you to Forrage for ſome Victuals, whilſt I, accompanied with 2000 men, ſet upon the *Sarazens*. They did as he adviſed them, and

within ſhort time they behaved themſelves ſo valiantly, that they gained from the Enemy 300 Chariots laden with all ſorts of Victuals. Having thus ſeized the Victuals, they were conducting the ſame into the City, but the Souldan ſore vexed at his Loſſes, got between the City and them, thinking to have defeated them from Entrance, but King *Pepin* eſpying their Policy, and how they had ſtop'd up the paſſage, preſently couched his Spear,

Spear, and ran upon the Souldan so violently, that he bared the proud Pagan to the Earth, then pulling out his Sword at one *Archillon*, a very valiant Commander, with such fury, that he struct him out of his Saddle. *Valentine* and the *green-knight* perceiving the great courage of King *Pepin*, and what fortune he had in the Field, at that present entred freshly into the Battle, and with a Resolute Courage, even in the presence of the Souldan, he hewed down the chief Standard of the Sarazens. The Standard being overthrown, *Valentine* addressed him against the Souldan himself, and with his Spear he so encountred him, that he so foiled him, as he could scarcely sit his Horse. *Moraldus*, one of the chief Commanders was slain, and his Admiral taken prisoner by the *green knight*, with other Exploits performed on both parts. But mark what follows, these two Knights were so Triumphant in their uncertain Victory, that they prest the Enemy so far within danger, that when they would Return they could not, & so consequently were taken Prisoners by the *Sarazens*, and brought before the Souldan. The Souldan having gotten them in Bands, insulted proudly over them, and with an Oath he vowed by his *Mahomet*, that they should never escape with Life, but gave present commandment to Raise up a Gibbet before the City Walls, and presently in the sight of all his Enemies to Hang them up. Now were *Valentine* and the *green-knight* in a great fear, but we will leave them a little, and Return to those Christians that had gotten great booty of Victuals, yet could not get into the City therewithal, by reason that they were encountred by the *Sarazens* Army: In which encounter the Christians were so hard beset, that they were doubtful what should be the end of that days bickering. And at last, they espying what desperate case they stood in, with one consent issued forth Men, VVomen, Priests, Clarks, and all degrees. When the Pagans saw their multitudes, they were forced to Retire themselves into their Tents, and by that means the Christians obtained all their prey of Victuals, and safely conveyed it into the City, altho' with loss of many a life. The Emperor was exceeding heavy for the loss of his Warlike Men, especially for his Son *Valentine*, and the *green-knight*; most heavy and sad also was the worthy King *Pepin*. *Pacolet* seeing these two Peers take the matter so heavily, Re-comforted them again, saying on this manner: Lords, leave of your Lamentations, for it shall fare better with *Valentine* and the *green-knight*, than you can Imagine. Friend (said the Emperor) if thy words prove true, I will advance thy Estate: Sir, said he, shortly you shall make tryal of my Love and Respect towards you: So he betook him to his Wooden Horse, and departed towards the Souldans Host, and came thither just

at the Instant that the Souldan came to Judge *Valentine* and the *Green-Knight* to death; and how it was prevented you shall hear in the Chapter following.

Chap. XXXIII. *How* Pacolet, *by Enchantment, delivered* Valentine *and the* Green-knight *out of the Bondage of the Souldan; and how* Pacolet *Couzened the Souldan when he had him upon his Horse, & instead of carrying him to* Portugal, *brought him to* Constantinople, *where he was Hanged.*

ALL being assembled as aforesaid, the *Souldan* began thus to speak; Lords, here I present before you, these that most incumber the mighty Gyant *Ferragus*, and that which most you ought to respect, is, that one of them hath forsaken his Religion; & for that cause my Judgment is, that he be sent to *Ferragus*, & from him receive punishment fitting his offence: Nay, said the other *Sarazens*, let us never do so; but let them both suffer Death to morrow morn. Lords, (quoth the *Souldan*) let it be so. These Resolutions thus agreed upon, the *Souldan* entred his Pavilion to Supper, where being set, *Pacolet* came and saluted him in the Name of *Mahomet*. *Pacolet* (quoth the *Souldan*) thou art welcome; how fareth *Ferragus* my dear Friend? Sir (said *Pacolet*) Right well; and by me sends gladsome Tydings, if you please to hear them. Right gladly (said the *Souldan*) I prithee begin. Then *Pacolet* drew him aside, out of the hearing of his Attendants, and said: Sir, know this, I am lately come out of *Portugal*, and sent by the fair Wife of *Ferragus*, whose heart is on fire with the love she beareth to you; long hath she concealed these her Affections, but having power no longer to keep close the Closet of her Breast, she hath committed to me her love, her trust, and what she dares not utter to any other but my self. Again, *Ferragus* is in *Aquitain*, so that no opportunity should be omitted, therefore come along with me, and stay no longer to Expostulate, for upon my Horse will we suddenly arrive in *Portugal*, and bring you to the fair Ladies sight; *Pacolet*, thou hast more gladded my heart than all the Worldly Treasure can afford; true it is, she is the only Woman living that ever I aimed at, but never knew I how to effect my wishes: The Souldan caused *Pacolet* to be highly feasted, so on the morrow they went towards their Journey, but mark what followed; *Valentine* and the *green-knight* you must conceive, were both in the Pavilion, and were right glad that they had gotten a sight of *Pacolet*, but durst not make any shew thereof; & *Pacolet* on the other side shewed himself a flatterer to the Souldan, in eating,

eating, drinking, and revelling at the Souldan's Table, and in beholding the Prisoners, said thus unto the Souldan (in the hearing of all) 'Sir, 'how dare you venture your noble person so near to this *Green-knight*, & 'not rather give him his desert, for of all men living, he is most danger-'ous: First, for the wrongs that he hath committed against his Brother '*Ferragus*, bereaving him of *Clerimond*, and giving her in marriage to a 'Christian Knight, next, he hath Renounced his *Mahomet*; these things 'considered, it is fit that he should die, were there no more Men living. 'Friend (qd. the Souldan) to morrow morning they shall both be hanged. Then the Souldan commanded the Prisoners to be strongly Guarded upon pain of Death, and so withdrawing him to his Chamber, left *Valentine* and the *green knight* under the conduct of those that most desired their Deaths.

In the dead time of the Night came *Pacolet* unto *Valentine* and the *green-knight*, and first freed them of their Bands, and by Art so charmed all their W'arders, (who slept securely) that he brought them past all danger. Having thus set them at liberty, about the dawning of the day he came to the Souldan's Tent, crying out so loud unto him: that he awaken'd him; and then *Pacolet* began thus to say unto him: 'Sir, little appeareth your 'love to the Wife of *Ferragus*, seeing for her sake you are loath to break one 'hours sleep. Whereunto the Souldan replyed, 'Thou hast done well to 'awaken me, for I was even now in a most fearful Dream; and thus it 'was, Methought a Crow did bear me swiftly thro' the Air, & as she was 'flying away with me, another great Bird met me, and struck at me with 'his Bill so hard, that the blood forthwith issued out in abundance; now 'this Dream maketh me much to fear that *Ferragus* hath some Intelligence 'of my desires, and means to Revenge himself upon me. Away Sir (qd. *Pacolet*) with this childish fear, will you therefore neglect the Love of the Beautious Lady? By *Mahomet* (quoth the Souldan) thou sayest truth, & calling his Chamberlain to make him ready, gave him this Charge: Sirrah, be secret, if my Uncle *Bryan* ask for me, tell him I am gone a little way to disport with *Pacolet*, then *Pacolet* took the Souldan behind him upon his Wooden Horse, and turning the pin, the Horse rose up into the Air so swiftly, that in a little time they were come to *Constantinople*, even in the Emperor's Palace: The Souldan perceiving *Pacolet*'s Horse to make a stay, said thus unto him: Friend, are we at our Journeys end? Yea, and fear nothing, for we are now in *Portugal*, in the Palace of King *Ferragus*. By *Mahomet* (said the Souldan) the Devil hath born us here very quickly. Well (said *Pacolet*) enter you into the great Hall of this Palace, and in the mean space I will hast into the Chamber of the Lady, & presently

cause

cause you to be brought unto her Bed. Do so quoth the Souldan, for I am even well near Ravished with joy, and shall think each minute an hour, till I have my desire

Now sitteth the Souldan in the Hall, attending the coming back of *Pacolet*, while he in the mean space, maketh towards the Chamber wherein the Emperor lay; being come to the door. He gave a great blow against it, insomuch that the Chamberlain asked who it was that thus presumed to disturb the Emperor's Rest? Friend, quoth *Pacolet*, fear not, for I am *Pacolet*, newly come from the Souldan's Host, where I have set at Liberty both *Valentine* and the *green-knight*, who were condemned to dye. Besides, say unto the Emperor, that I have brought along with me the Souldan himself to be in *Portugal*. Wherefore he may now be Revenged on him at full, for he hath most justly deserved Death; the Chamberlain told the Emperor all these tydings, & King *Pepin* also; so arming themselves, they came into the Hall where the *Souldan* sat: The *Souldan* perceiving himself betrayed, cryed out with a loud Voice: Thou false *Pacolet*, Traytor to my Person, I vow to be Revenged upon thee for thy disloyal practice towards me, and therewithal drew out his Sword, and like a Mad Man ran up and down the Hall, striking the very stones so fiercely, that he made the fire to fly from those senceless Walls: As he was in this madding fit, the Attendants entered towards him with Torches. The *Souldan* espying them, defended himself so fiercely, that he slew the 'Squire that attended upon King *Pepin*: This Act of his fired the Courage of the King, that he made a blow at him, and felled him to the Earth. Being fallen, they bound him hand and foot, and in the morning came *Valentine* and the *green knight*, who finding the Souldan there in Bands, were very joyful.

The Emperor and the King seeing *Valentine*, were joyful for his deliverance, giving great thanks to *Pacolet* for his care over his Son, and withal said, *Pacolet*, one strain more of thy Horse must I demand; you shall Sir (qd *Pacolet*) and if you will get behind me, I will instantly Transport you into Hell. But Lords, let that pass, and Return unto the Death of the Souldan, for if he escape your hands at this time, a world of miseries will follow: So that very hour they proceeded to Judgment, & commanded him to be Hanged on the greatest Tower of the Palace, even in very sight of the Pagan Host.

This done, the Pagans stood as Men confounded and amazed, to see him there hanging, and wondered how he came within the City, but at last *Bryan* his Uncle told them how he had been deceived by that Traytor *Pacolet*. After they had long lamented the Death of the Souldan, they gather-

ed

ed themselves to councel, and in his stead chose his Uncle *Bryan* Souldan, After all these things done, *Pacolet* took his leave of the Emperor, and returned into *Aquitain*, to comfort the Lady *Clerimond*, as he promised: but before his departure, *Valentine* came unto him and said: *Pacolet*, at your coming into *Aquitain*, salute from me my Mother *Bellisant*, and my loving Lady *Clerimond*, my brother *Orson*, and the good Duke of *Aquitain*, with the rest of his Nobles; and above all the rest, deliver this to my Mother, by which she shall understand our whole proceedings here; sir, said *pacolet*, all this *I* shall willingly perform: so taking his horse, he, leapt upon him, and he flew up into the air, as swift as smoak.

The next morning *pacolet* was come to his Journeys end, and finding the Duke of *Aquitain*, the Empress *Bellisant*, *Orson* and *Clerimond* all in safety, he saluted them all, and delivered them Letters, who said: Lady, your son *Valentine* greeteh you well, shewing you, that the Emperor is right sorrowful about your banishment, and hath required the Treason of the Traytor, with the loss of his life, wherefore he promiseth, that so soon as he can free his Country from the incursions of the *Sarazens*, to come himself in person, and then forth-with bring with him the *Green Kt.*, whom *Orson* had vanquished. The Lady hearing these joyful tydings suddenly fell into a swound; but *Orson* perceiving it, suddenly snatched her up in his Arms, and being somewhat come to her self, she said: My Child, *I* am justly overcome with joy, in that *I* understand *I* am proved innocent of such abominable crimes, as *I* was falsly accused of: but I long to see the Emperor, whom if I might but once again behold, I should not desire longer to live; for I am well enough revenged, and my accuser hath justly suffered most shameful death for his Treachery.

Chap. XXXIV. *How King* Trompart *came before* Aquitain, *to succour* Ferragus, *and brought with him* Adrimain *the Enchanter, who betrayed* Pacolet, *and how the King of* Indie, *caused* K. Trompart's *head to be struck off: And how he would have married with* Clerimond; *and how* Pacolet *was revenged on* Adrimain *in the shape of a Woman: And how* Ferragus *was slain; and how* Orson, *and the Duke went with their Army to* Constantinople, *to succour the Emperor: and how* Orson *led along with him his Mother: and how all the* pagans *were slain before* Constantin. *how the Emperor received his son, and his Wife* Bellisant.

PAcolet being arived in *Aquitain*, at the same time that K. *Trompart* came thither to aid *Ferragus* against the Christians, at whose coming, *Ferragus* began thus to salute him: Famous King, of your coming I am

glad, hoping by your aſſiſtance to get back my Siſter *Clerimond*, and to be revenged on all thoſe that have detained her. *Ferragus* (ſaid K. *Trompart*) doubt nothing, for I have brought with me *Adrimain* the Enchanter, whoſe skill ſhall confound *Pacolet* in his own Art. Thanks gentle King, I am much bound to you for your love, and if he can but get *Pacolet* into my hands, I ſhall reward him liberally. Sir (quoth *Adrimain*) put your truſt in me, and ſo taking his leave, betook him to his magick Art. Being provided of all things, amongſt the reſt, he laded himſelf with Victuals, and took his way towards *Aquitain*; coming thither, he craved entrance of the gates to ſell his Victuals, which was eaſily granted. After he had ſold all, he went into the Palace, where he chanced on *Pacolet*, whom *Pacolet* knew well. *Adrimain* (quoth *Pacolet*) you are welcome, from whence come you, and what is your Errand? Then ſaid *Adrimain*, you know that long I ſerved K. *Trompart*, yet by Fate I am fallen into a great miſchance, for one in his court having ſmitten me, becauſe I would not teach him the Principles of my Art, I drew Forth my knife and killed him: Now fearing death, *I* fled from the Court, and came towards you for ſuccour, and will prove unto you a faithful Servant, ſo be pleaſed to accept of me. *Adrimain* (ſaid *Pacolet*) *I* am content, let it be ſo, make thee good cheer, and be merry. As they were thus in their Cups, *Adrimain* ſaw the fair *Clerimond* paſs thro' the Hall, who preſently demanded what lady it was. Then ſaid *Pacolet*, it is the ſiſter of *Ferragus*, who muſt be married to a right valiant knight: Whilſt they were thus in conference, came *Orſon* unto them, and ſaid, Gentlemen, *I* could gladly wiſh that one of your art would ſhew ſomewhat to delight the aſſembly.

At whoſe words, *Adrimain* drew up a cup above a Pillar, in ſuch wiſe, that thro' the Palace (ſeemingly to all the Company) ran a river, furniſhed with all ſorts of Fiſh, little and great: When the Beholders ſaw the water to come up ſo ſtrongly againſt them, they were afraid of being drowned: *Pacolet* beholding this feat, amongſt the reſt, began a ſong, and in that ſong a charm, that it ſeemed to all the Beholders, that a hart run thorow that River, over-turning all things that ſtood in his way. After this hart, ran hunters with their hounds. This made many of the Beholders leap after, thinking to have taken the hart: but *Pacolet*, by his Art, made the hart ſuddenly to vaniſh. This ſport (quoth *Orſon*) was very well performed; and ſo the company breaking up, *Pacolet* led *Adrimain* to his chamber, to be with him; but proved fatal, for towards midnight *Adrimain* ſo Enchanted all within the Court, and with them *Pacolet*, that he had time to work all that he deſired. Afterwards he went towards

wards the wooden horſe, and getting him, came into the chamber of *Clerimond*, and by art cauſed her to riſe, and make her ready, and ſetting her on the horſe behind him, came unto a window, turned the pin, and ſuddenly he arrived in the Tent of *K. Trompart*. Being come thither, he cryed out aloud, ſaying: Great King, ſleep not, but haſten you hither, and you ſhall ſee the pleaſant Lady *Clerimond*, whom *I* have ſtolen from *Aquitain*, and with her *Pacolet's* horſe. Now (ſaid the King) *I* well perceive thy love; is this the Siſter of *Ferragus*? Yea ſaid *Adrimain*, and *I* have ſtolen her away, and alſo betrayed *pacolet* my fellow Magician, for he ſhall never be maſter of his horſe again: Ay, but (ſaid the King) art thou acquainted with the manner of his horſe? O long ſince worthy King, and by vertue of the pin, how to govern him. Having thus made this known to K. *Trompart*, he thought to make experience of the horſe himſelf, and taking *Clerimond* behind him, would Tranſport her into his own country and there marry her.

He being thus determined, he embraced the Lady in his arms (for all this while ſhe was not awaked out of her enchanted ſleep, and ſet her on the horſe of wood: All this *Adrimain* was eye-witneſs of, and ſaid thus to him, My Lord, if you fail one jot of the true uſe of the horſe, both your ſelf, and the Lady are in very great danger: Fear not that (quoth *Trompart*) and ſo turning the pin, he mounted ſwiftly into the air, and before the next morning he was two hundred miles on his way, but not at his Journeys end, for now awaked the Fair Lady *Clerimond* out of her enchanted ſleep, who ſeeing her ſelf ſo deluded, fell ſuddenly into a ſwound; this chance ſtruck to the heart of *K. Trompart*, for he was afraid, leaſt ſhe had been dead, & ſo turning the pin, he ſtopt the horſe in a Fair green field by a Fountain, then taking the Lady from the horſe, he laid her on the graſs, and took a little water, and caſt it on her face; and the Lady recovering, made ſuch grievous lamentations, that K. *Trompart* was well nigh out of his wits: Within this place there was a Shepherd, of whom *K. Trompart* required ſomething to eat, which he gave to the Lady, who did eat thereof, & was refreſhed: and at laſt being come again to her ſpeech, ſhe weeping uttered theſe words: Unhappy I above all creatures, for I have loſt my joy by curſed Treaſon. Alas *Valentine* my love, curſed be he that hath ſeparated us *Trompart* hearing her ſo clamourous, reproved her ſoundly, ſaying: Lady, leave off theſe fooliſh words of the chriſtian boy, or elſe I ſhall ſeperated thy head from thy body? is it not better for thee to be my wife, that am ſole lord of this Jurisdiction, than to have a beggarly ſtart-up, that hath neither land nor living? and with theſe words he would

have kiſſed her, but the Lady diſdaining him, hit him with her fiſt upon the mouth.

This ſtrange and unlookt for diſdainfulneſs, put K. *Trompart* in ſuch an anger, that he in a furious rage caught her up, and ſet her upon the horſe again: and turning the pin the contrary way, preſently, inſtead of carrying her into his own country, he lighted in *Indie*, in the midſt of a market-place, kept there that day: the people ſeeing ſuch a ſtrange ſight, marvelled much thereat: The Lady *Clerimond*, by this time, knew the horſe to be *Pacolets*, and ſaid: Now am I falſly betrayed, and *Pacolet* robbed of his horſe; but my dear *Valentine*, he it is moſt ſticketh at my heart; for now ſhall I never ſee thee more. *Trompart* (thought for all this, that he had been in his own country) ſtill beating down her piteous laments with bitter words: But this fell out ill for K: *Trompart*, for the King of *Indie* knew him well: K. *Trompart* being come before the K. of *Indie*, he bid him welcome, for you are he that put my Brother to death; wherefore I will be revenged on thee; and ſo cauſed his head to be ſmitten off: After the Lady was led into the King's Palace, where he ſat in his own perſon, and he thus ſaid: Lady, I know now of whence you are, by the bright ſplendor of your face, it hath enthralled my heart; wherefore, if you pleaſe to be my wife, I will make you Queen of all this ſpacious continent. Sir (quoth ſhe) you ſpeak graciouſly; but to take any man to husband, I have made a ſolemn vow to refrain the ſpace of one whole year, wherefore if it pleaſe you let my vow be accompliſhed, and that time being run out, then will I willingly conſent thereto: Well, ſaid the King, thy anſwer is reaſonable, let it be as thou haſt ſaid, perform thy vow, and remain within my palace; and he commanded that her attendants ſhould be as great as if ſhe had been his Queen, allowing her a chamber of ſtate; into which chamber ſhe cauſed to be brought the wooden horſe that carried her thither; and being there, ſhe placed it in the ſecreteſt place ſhe could deviſe, and ſtill deſired ſhe might be freed out of that danger. Now we leave her a while, & return to *pacolet*, and look back alſo to *Aquitain*, and ſee the mourning that is made for the Lady *Clerimond*.

The night after *Adrimain* had betrayed *pacolet*, great lamentations were made for the Fair *Clerimond*, throughout the city of *Aquitain*. Moreover, when *pacolet* found *Adrimain* abſent, he doubted more, and looking round about the chamber wherein the horſe ſtood, he ſuddenly miſſed it: all this ſo Falling out, *pacolet* fell into a moſt grievous paſſion, inſomuch, as had not *Orſon*, at that inſtant come in, he would have killed himſelf.

Pacolet being thus Reſcued by *Orſon*, and beholding the general ſorrow for

for the beauteous Lady *Clerimond*, he began thus to comfort them; Lords, I will not give over till I am revenged on that Traytor *Adrimain*, by whom we are all thus wronged. Herewithal he departed, and apparelled himſelf like a Gallant Maid, and took his way to the Hoſt of *Ferragus*. Being come among the Army, many *Pagans* prayed for her love, but evermore *Pacolet* excuſed himſelf, and ſaid: Pardon me, I pray you, For I am promiſed already to the Enchanter *Adrimain*, and ſo they let her paſs on. At laſt *Pacolet* came to the Tent where *Adrimain* was; at which Adrimain ſtood amazed, and was ſo deeply overcome in love, that that night he retained him in his chamber; but *Pacolet* no wit to ſeek of his ſhifts, made ſomewhat ſqueamiſh, and ſaid: My Lord, know this, I have been deſired of many, but I think you the worthieſt to be firſt ſerved: Daughter (quoth *Adrimain*) fear nothing, make good cheer, and be merry, for I have a great deſire to thee, and will uſe thee well: Now he committed the Maiden to one of his Servants, to be ſerved with all the Dainties that could be had.

Pacolet being thus highly feaſted in the Tent of *Ferragus*, *Pacolet* demanded of the Servant of *Adrimain*, what was become of *K. Trompart*, the ſervant ſaid, I think he is returned again into his own country, and carried along with him the Lady *Clerimond*, upon a horſe of Wood, that my Maſter had given him. *Pacolet* hearing of this, was vext at the heart: By this time was *Adrimain* come unto his Tent, ſaying to *Pacolet*. Daughter, is it time to go to Reſt? ſee here is the bed we mean to ſport in: your will be done, ſaid *Pacolet*: Then *Adrimain* put off his Cloaths, and went into the bed: *Pacolet* ſo enchanted him into ſo ſtrong aſleep, that awake he could not till the morning: As he dealt with *Adrimain*, ſo he did with all round about him; and putting off his womans attire, he clad himſelf in all the Richeſt Cloaths that *Adrimain* had; and after, with his own ſword, cut off his head, and bare it away with him: Having thus done, he takes his way towards the Tent of *Ferragus*, the which he found well guarded, and there by his Art, he alſo caſt them all into a heavy ſleep. This done, he entered the Tent of *Ferragus*, where he ſuddenly made him leap out of his bed, and cloath him: & tying him to his Girdle, made him run by his ſide like a Spannel, till he came to the very entrance of the Gates of *Aquitain*.

When *Pacolet* was come to the Gates of the Palace, he found there the Duke himſelf, accompanied with many of his Barons; and eſpying *Pacolet*, they ſaid unto him, Where is *Clerimond*, that thou bringeſt her not again? he anſwered, Lords be patient a while, I cannot ſhew you all at once: know this, I am fully revenged on *Adrimain*, for here I have brought his head, and here is *Ferragus*, who by my Art I have alſo ſurprized, as

you may see, Then said *Orson*, you have done very well Nay, Lords, more yet have *I* to say; which is, *I* have enchanted asleep the whole host of *Ferragus*, therefore if ever you mean to have Resistless Victory, go now. What say you, my Lords? (quoth *Orson*) methinks *Pacolet* hath well advised us, therefore let us go on: So they slaughtered all that lay before them, and put *Ferragus* into a most filthy, dark, and loathsome Prison, until their Return.

After this great slaughter was ended, the Duke returned again into *Aquitain*, and there commanded to have the Gyant *Ferragus* brought before him, who was by this time awaked out of his enchanted sleep, unto whom the Duke thus said: *Ferragus*, if thou wilt here forsake thy *Mahomet*, and receive Baptism, then thou shalt live, which if thou refuse to do, thou shalt surely dye. Know, said *Ferragus*, I had rather suffer a thousand deaths: So he was suddenly beheaded. After his death, *Orson* took leave of the Duke, and went towards *Constantinople*, to aid his Father the Grecian Emperor, and his Uncle King *Pepin* of *France*, against the unbelieving *Sarazens*, that had strongly besieged the City, but a little before his departure, the Duke said thus unto him: Worthy K. sith you are resolved to depart, I will go along with you, and bear you company; *Orson* was very joyful to hear him say so, and gave him thanks; so taking some small time to set things in a Readiness, he committed the keeping of the City to a worthy and valiant Knight, who brought them on towards their journey. But by the way, the Empress *Bellisant* much lamented the hard usage of her Lord: But *Orson* pittying her, said: Mother leave off your tears, and only joy in that you have been falsly accused, which now will much encrease your honour: But I fear most our entrance into the City, which, as *I* hear, is much troubled with *Sarazens*. Nay, said *Pacolet*, fear not that, for *I* will work a device to enter, and my self will go before, and tell them so; Do so, said *Orson*, and tell *Valentine* the hard Fortunes of *Clerimond*. Nay, quoth *Pacolet*, not *I*, *I* will be no bearer of such sad tydings. Now K. *Pepin* and the Emperor being strongly besieged, were in great distress for victuals, within the City, and there was no way to be relieved but by the sword. Then *Valentine* accompanied with the Green *Kt.* and a worthy band of Soldiers, issued out of *Constantinople*, and charged upon 200 Chariots of Victuals of the *Pagans*, and recovered the same, with the death of all those that attended upon them. Having gotten this Booty, they made their return towards *Constantinople*, thinking to recover the City, but they were begirt round about; on the one side with the Soldan, and on the other with the *K.* of *Arabia*, and thirdly with a King called

Affricon

Affiction. Amongſt theſe Champions fell out a terrible bloody Conflict, but *Valentine* in ſingle fight killed the K. of *Dramagen*, and the K. of *Clarion*. The *Green Kt.* alſo behaved himſelf gallantly, for at one blow he ſtruck off the ſhield Arm of the K. of *Morien*, and before that ſlew his brother: but all this valour little availed; for in the end they were both taken Priſoners, and led before the ſouldan: who having them in his poſſeſſion, aſſembled 15 Pagan Kts. to adjudge them to death *Valentine* being thus in bands, greatly lamented the ſtate of the Lady *Clerimond*, taking leave both of his father, Mother, Brother, and the reſt; ſaying, *I* muſt now forſake you all, and never again behold your faces. The *Green* Kt. ſeeing him ſo paſſionate, ſaid, let us dye in a good cauſe, and welcome death.

Now was the ſouldan ſet in his chair of ſtate, to proceed to Judgment; in the mean ſpace in comes *Pacolet*, in the midſt of the throng, not known of any, & came & ſtood before the Judgment ſeat, & kneeling down, ſaid, right dear ſir, know *I* am a Meſſenger from your brother *Godart*, the great K. of *Argier*, who to your ſuccour, hath brought along with him four mighty Kings, & by me requireth on which ſide your Army ſhall be ranked Again, he prays you, if you have any Chriſtian Priſoners, to ſend them him, & he will ſend them into his own Country, to draw the Plow; & here ſtands a couple of fit Inſtruments for that purpoſe. The Souldan rejoyced at theſe tydings, & commanded he ſhould be highly feaſted for that night: mean time *Valentine* and the *Green Kt.* were glad of *Pacolets* company. In the dead time of the night, *Pacolet went unto* them, and unbound them, and giving to each of them a horſe, bid them follow him. Being out of the Enemies reach, *Pacolet* ſaid thus to them: Lords, be comforted, for in this land is aſſembled the Duke of *Aquitain* & the Kt. *Orſon*, the noble Empreſs, & the Lady *Fezon*: Ay, but ſaid *Valentine*, why cometh not the fair *Clerimond*? Then anſwered *Pacolet*, ſhe would have come, but being Sea-ſick, was forced to return again to *Aquitain*: So *Valentine* queſtioned no farther with him. Then *Pacolet* adviſed them all to go into the City of *Conſtantinople*, & on the morrow iſſue out thereof with a mighty Army upon the Enemy. In the mean ſpace I will on the other ſide ſo beſtir my ſelf, that the Hoſt of the warlike Duke ſhall come up, and give a freſh Aſſault. Now the Souldan ſeeing this, ſhall imagine it to be his Brother, the K. of *Argier*. *Pacolet* (ſaid *Valentine*) thou haſt well adviſed, and ſo it ſhall be effected: Thus they departed, *pacolet* took his way to the Duke of *Aquitain*, who was yet on the Sea-ſhore, telling him that he been with the Hoſt of the Souldan, & how he had freed *Valentine*, & the *Green* Kt. Then *Orſon* anſwered *Pacolet*, there is yet one thing more to be done, & that is, that to morrow morning, we aſſail the hoſt

of

of the Sarazens on the one side, & they of *Constantinople* on the other, & so by that means we shall overthrow them quite. For all that comes on your part, shall be thought to come to aid the Sarazens. Then did the Duke draw up his men in order, and so kept themselves that night.

The next morning the Emperor and K. *Pepin*, diligently brought forth their men to fight, and divided their host into five Battels, The first was delivered to *Valentine*, the second to the Green *Kt.* the third to *K. Pepin*, the forth to *Myllian Daugler*, and the fifth to *Sampson* of *Orleance*, one that bare in his Banner a Bear of Silver. At break of day these powers issued out of the City, to give an assault upon the Enemy: being come into the field, they sounded their Instruments, the noise thereof so affrighted the Sarazens, that they ran out of their Tents, crying, an alarum, an Alarum. This Battel was extream hot for the Christians that day, yet the Enemy had no cause to boast. *K. Pepin* behaved himself so valiantly, and cryed out to his soldiers; *St. Denis*, *St. Denis*, Then a Sarazen cryed out to the Souldan to Retire, for the safe-guard of their lives, for this night have we lost our two Prisoners, & also there is coming against us a new supply of a great Army. Then the Souldan thought that he ha been betrayed, but yet he made forward, and roused up their courage doubly, insomuch that they enforced the Christians to fall back, but little availed their pride: for there came upon them the Duke of *Aquitain*, with his forces, & assailed them so fiercely, that they put to the sword, all that did come before them, and thus the Christians conquered. When the Battle was ended, & the Christians had recovered their scattered forces, *Valentine* & *Orson* came before the Emperor, doing unto him dutiful reverence. Father (quoth *Valentine*) here you may behold my Brother *Orson*, whom as yet you never knew; then the Emperor embraced him with tears, & so did the worthy *K. Pepin*, *Valentine*, *Orson*, the Green *Kt*, *Blandiman*, & *Guidard* the Merchant, he that vanquished the false Arch-Priest. All these, with great Triumph, set out to visit the Tent of the Noble Empress *Bellisant*, and the Lady *Fezon*.

By this time they are come: When the Emperor saw his Wife *Bellisant*, he leapt off his Horse, & in tears and sighs not being able to speak, he embraced her: And *Valentine* and *Orson* bare them company in their lamentations, so did also many of the Rest there assembled. At last words took place, and the Emperor Re-counted all the hard dealings that had proceeded against the Empress, requiring pardon for what was past. My Lord (quoth she) since it hath so pleased the Fates to bring me unto your sight, I freely forgive all wrongs; but I long to see the Man that proved my Innocency with his Sword, Love (quoth the Emperor) this is he by whom your honour

Honour was preſerved. Sir (quoth the Lady) you ought to be Regarded for your ſervice to the Empire of *Greece*, and the *King of France*: For which I make you my Chamberlain, and give you yearly a thouſand Maaks in Gold. Lady, I thank your Bounty, and will attend you during Life. Then ſaid *Valentine*, Mother, I pray tell me ſome tydings of *Clerimond*. Fair Son, *Clerimond* hath been ſtolen from *Aquitain*, and given to *King Trompart*, that came to the Pagans Aid. *Valentine* hearing this, lookt ſtrangely upon *Pacolet*, thinking that he had deceived him, and would have ſmitten him, but *Pacolet* entreated him to be Patient, for an Enchanter hath ſtolen my Horſe away; but I am Revenged on him, by cutting off his Head. *Valentine* underſtanding theſe Misfortunes, and that every one was Innocent, grew into bitter paſſions for his loſs.

Chap. XXXV. *How King* pepin *took leave of the Emperor at his Departure from* Greece, *& how* Orſon *went along with him.* How *Garnier fainting, left the Knife in the Bed, and Accuſed* Orſon *falſely of Treaſon: and how the Knife was found in the King's Bed. And how* Orſon *claimed Combat againſt his Accuſers, when they would have adjudged him: and it was (by the twelve peers of* France) *granted. And how* Valentine, *in ſecking* Clerimond, *arrived at* Antioch, *& Fought with a Dragon, and in the end ſlew the Dragon. And how* Valentine *after the Conqueſt of the Dragon, cauſed the King of* Antioch, *and all his Land to be baptized: and of the lawleſs Love of the Queen* Rozamond. *And how the King of* Antioch *was put to Death for Renouncing his Mahometry, by King* Brandiffer, *his Wifes Father. And how the Emperor of* Greece, *and the* Green-Knight *were taken priſoners by* Brandiffer.

THeſe Wars thus ended, *K. Pepin* took his leave of the Emperor, and Returned into *France*. *Orſon* would needs go along with his Uncle *Pepin*, and ſpend the Remainder of his days in his Service. The *King* was content, and ſaid unto him, I will make you high Conſtable of *France*, moreover, if it ſo chance that my Young Son *Charles* ſhould Deceaſe before me, I will make you *K.* of *France*. I thank you gracious Uncle, and you ſhall find me faithful: and along with me will I bear the Lady *Fezon*: The day of taking leave came, & each embraced other with kiſſes & tears: But *Valentine* could not Reſt, for he had loſt his Love, wherefore I am Reſolved to ſeek my love, for whom I endangered my Life, & by my ſword I won her: Her I bewail, and her will I Recover again, if ſhe be alive: but if I find her not, ſhort and woeful will be my days: And ſo he called *Pacolet* to him, and ſaid, Wilt thou ſerve me, and be my Companion in this unknown Task? Sir, quoth he, willingly; and am Ready whenſoever you ſhall ſet forward. Then *Valentine* made all things in a Readineſs for his departure; and now hath taken Sea, and left his Country, only Accompanied with three Attendance. Now we leave him, and ſpeak of

King *Pepin*, who by this time is seated in *Paris*, and was honourably Received: But above all, the valiant *Orson* was highly esteemed, insomuch, that he had even all the Command of the Kingdom delivered unto him If ought was brought before the King, *Orson* was the Man to be sued unto.

This Greatness of *Orson* fretted *Haufray* and *Henry* (of whom you have heard before) to the heart, insomuch that they plotted means how *to* take away his Life, saying, *it* was much to their Indignity, *that Orson* should be thus preferred before them, being Sons unto the King: Surely, says the one to the other, his Glory cannot long endure, for his own pride will be his overthrow. Ay, but (said *Haufray*) understand me, we have two Nephews, Sons unto our Elder Sister, *to wit*, *Florence* and *Garnier*, these are both hardy and fierce, and by them methinks some Plot might be set on foot again, they are fit Members to Execute any Villany, for one is Butler unto the King, the other is Usher unto his private Chamber: Now either of these may enter into the King's Chamber, and Murder him in his bed, and such a deed being done, it will surely be laid to *Orson*'s charge, for he only hath the Guard of his Person. If this can be effected, *Orson* will surely be Condemned to Death, and the Realm wholly light into our hands.

Upon this Resolution, they sent for these two Instruments of Murder, to acquaint them with the Treason, & being come, *Haufray* said unto them: Sirs, I and my Brother have laid a plot to do us good, and Raise you to Honour; which thing we chose rather to offer unto you, for that you are Allied unto us, and therefore we Respect you before others. Thus it is, you know our Father the King never loved us, but hath ever Advanced strangers, and left us slightly Regarded: *These* things considered, my Brother, I, and you two Brethers, descended from our Uncle, determines to put our doting Father to Death, & so we may share the Land into our own Government. *This* thing by us first plotted, were fittest to be executed by one of you, and I think you, *garnier*, to be the fittest for it, because you being Usher in the *King*'s Chamber, you may convey your self behind some Arras, and when the *King* is in bed Murder him. *This* being done, when it shall be known that the *King* is slain, the Fact will be laid upon *Orson*, for he only hath the charge of his Body, and so we shall quickly get him Adjudged to Death; and as for little *Charles*, we shall do well enough to make him away. Uncle (said *garnier*) doubt not but that I shall undertake this Enterprize. Shortly after, *garnier* on a Night when the *King* was at Supper, got a knife, and secretly entred into the *King* Chamber, and hid himself behind the hangings. When the hour of the king's going to bed came, he was attended by his Guard, & Chamberlain, as the manner was. *The K.*

being laid, every man departed, save only *Orson*, who conferred with the King till he fell asleep: *Orson* seeing the King asleep, laid himself down upon a pallet by him.

The dead time of the Night was come, wherein *Garnier* assayed (having the knife Ready) this bloody Enterprise: But being come to the bed side, Ready to lift up his Arm to strike the fatal stroak, he thought the K. would awaken, and so trembling for fear, laid him down by the bed side, & durst not stir: Anon he would adventure again, but being (as before) possest with fear, he put the knife within the Bed, & then he Returned to the place from whence he came. *Orson* all the while slept soundly, mis-doubting nothing, but yet was troubled with a frightful dream, which was, that one would have Robbed his Wife of Honour: Also he thought, that beside a River, he saw two Herons fight with a Hawk, but the Hawk defended her self so valiantly, that he had slain the two Herons, had they not been assisted by a multitude of little Birds, and the Herons likewise had slain the Hawk, but that an Eagle Rescued him.

At this Dream *Orson* awaked, and was much astonished thereat, saying, the gods preserve my Brother *Valentine* from Treasons. By thy time, the day broke, & *Orson* softly stole out of the Chamber, fearing to awaken the King. When *Garnier* saw *Orson* gone, he also followed soon after, & took his way towards the chamber, where he found the two Brethren, who longeth to hear the News: *garnier*, quoth they, tell us what is done: Lords (said *garnier*) I would not do the like again for all the Gold in *France*, and yet I have not hurt the King, for still as I was lifting up my hand to strike, fear and horror did affright me, that I durst no more adventure. But I have advised me *of* another Plot, & have of purpose left the knife in the king's bed, & this it is, we will Accuse *Orson* of treason, and tell the king, there are four Traytors, whereof *Orson* is the Principle. Also, they will make away little *Charles*, and so wholly possess the Crown. To prove this, we will say, *Orson* hath conveyed a knife into the king's bed, if any demand how we know thereof, we will say, one of us standing at the door, heard all their conference. *Garnier*, said *Haufray*, you say well, but if *Orson* deny it, you and your Brother shall crave Combat against him, say that by such adventure you come by the worst, my Brother and I shall find Men enough to Rescue you. Thus they resolved, and thus was Treason laid the second time for *Orson* the innocent. The next day the King being at Dinner, attended by *Haufray* and *Henry*, who shewed good countenance to *Orson*: When *garnier* saw his time, he came before the King, saying: Worthy King, your Grace hath bestowed on me many kingly favours, wherefore it is my Duty to open unto you a Treason, which lately I chanced to hear, &

to the end you may have a care of your person, I will bewray unto you the practicers thereof.

Garnier prayed to lay hands on *Orson* first, for he was the principal Traytor, the number in all are four; *Orson* was the man should kill you in your bed with a knife; & that your Majesty may the better Credit me, this day, as they met together, I was in a certain place, and heard *Orson* say, the knife which you should be killed with, was hid in your bed; now if it please you to go or send, you shall find my words true. Sir (said *Florent*) my Brother speaketh nothing but truth.

The King hearing these words, beheld *Orson* with many strange countenances, and at last said: False and disloyal man, can such a thought enter into thy breast, as to take away my life, whom I have more respected than my own Children! Liege, quoth *Orson*, be not so lightly carried away to believe this accusation, for I protest I am clear of any such thought, and shall prove envy the Author of all these Treasons. Speak no more (said the K.) for if the knife be found in the bed, I will have no further proof. So calling to his Lords, he said: Lords, I was never so suddenly confounded, as at this present. Sir (said *Mylion Daugler*) I know not what to say, but I cannot believe that *Orson* is guilty of the Treason against your Majesty: Yea, but (said the *K.*) if we find a knife in the bed, it is an evident sign to move me to believe it; I pray let us go make tryal. So the *K.* went himself into the Chamber, accompanied with many Witnesses, where they found the knife, as *garnier* said: Alas! (said the *K.*) in whom may I trust, when my own kinsman seeketh my life, but I vow he shall suffer a shameful death. With that a valiant *Kt.* named *Simon*, came to *Orson*, which loved him well, and said: Alas! sir, flye and save your life, for the *K.* has found the knife in his bed; & so the *K.* hath vowed your death. *Orson* said, I fear nothing. The *K.* entred the Hall where *Orson* was guarded with fifty one kts. & so assembling his Peers, he proceeded to Judgment. *Orson* being brought before the *K.* & his Lords, he said unto them: Worthy Lords, since my words cannot defend me, I require but the custom of your Country; which is, that when a man shall be accused of Murther or Treason, he might crave a Combat against his Enemy. Now I hold my self innocent, which I will maintain, if by your counsels you grant me that which of right belongeth to me: and further, to clear my self, Lo here is my Gage, if I be overcome, do with my body as it pleaseth you. *Garnier* said to *Orson*, I think you had better hold your peace, for the thing being already proved, we have no reason to answer you in the Field. Ah Traytor! there is nothing yet proved, but that a man that feareth not damnation, and desireth honour, saith so. Upon these words the twelve Peers of *France* caused *Orson* to be removed out of the place, and

also

alſo the Brothers his Adverſaries, while in the mean ſpace the reſt diſputed the queſtion. At laſt it was adjudged, that *Orſon*'s demand was reaſonable, and that he ought to be heard. Then were the Brothers called in again before the king; and Duke *Myllon* demanded of *garnier*, Who were Confederate with him in the king's death: Lords (quoth he) I will not bewray them for all the wealth in *France*: *garnier* (quoth he) I give ſentance, that you & your Brother take up *Orſon*'s Gage, and fight with him; for ſince you conceal the reſt of theſe Murtherers, it is to be doubted, that there is malice in the plot. *Orſon* at this ſentance rejoyced, and caſt his glove down to theſe two Traytors, ſaying; Lords, here is my Glove, that I caſt down, upon this condition, that if my caſe be foul, or by them conquered, I offer my body to your will and pleaſure: Riſe then, ſaid the *K.* for Judgment is paſt: and for your farther ſecurity, it were good we had ſome hoſtage: With that *Haufray* and *Henry* offered themſelves body for body, for *garnier* and his Brother: And for *Orſon* ſtood *Myllon Daugler*, & Duke *Sampſon*. So a Months day was aſſigned for the Combat.

The time being come that they ſhould fight, Duke *Myllon Daugler*, *Sampſon*, *Galeram*, & *Garvaies*, brought forth *Orſon*; for he was well beloved: when he was armed, and well mounted, he rode through the City, nobly accompanied, towards the place appointed. Long he had not been there, but *Haufray* & *Henry* entred the field with *Garnier* & *Florent*, the two traytors, who greatly feared *Orſon*, but *Haufray* & *Henry* ſtill comforted them, promiſing them aid: Being thus in a readineſs, the Biſhop of *Paris* went unto them, and gave all three an oath, according to the Law of Arms, then the Biſhop departed. After came the Heraulds, & Serjeants of the field, to clear the place Now *Haufray* had provided 3000 Men hard by, & gave them command, that as ſoon as they heard him blow his Horn, they ſhould ſet forwards towards him. This gladded the Traytors at the Heart, but it little availed them, for as ſoon as the Trumpets ſignal gave, *Orſon* couched his Spear, and putting his Spurs to his Horſe, ran upon them with fury, and lent *garnier* ſuch a ſtroak, that he ran through both Shield & Armour: *Florent* on the other ſide, gave *Orſon* a blow, that he thought he had ſtruck againſt a tower: Falſe and accurſed traytor (quoth *Orſon*) thou haſt wrongfully accuſed me; e'er this day paſs, I ſhall ſhew thee where Loyalty doth reſt: and with theſe words, he with his Sword ſmote *garnier* out of his Saddle, and withal pull'd off his Helm, and had cut off his head, if his Brother *Florent* had not reſcued him.

Again, *Orſon* made towards *garnier*, and ſtriking off his Ear, ſaid: Fair Maſter, I would be loath you ſhould loſe by the bargain. Then began a freſh Combate between theſe three Champions, *garnier* having recovered

vered again his Helm, came upon *Orson* with all his force, thinking to have left some mark of that Encounter, but had not his Brother relieved him, he had soon been slain. Thus *Orson* had enough to do with these two, for they were of stout Courage, and besides, they relied much upon the rescue of *Hausfray* and *Henry*, but still *Orson* followed, and at last so wounded *garnier*, that he was fain to forsake his Horse. Being on the ground, he smote at *Orson*'s Horse, insomuch that he cut off one of his legs, and felled him to the earth, but *Orson* being light and strong, leapt from off his back, and took *garnier* between his Arms so strongly, that he took away his Shield, and threw him on the earth, but as he would have wounded him in the belly, *Florent* came upon *Orson*, & gave him such a stroak on the Helm; that he made him stagger; *Orson* vexed hereat, smote him so, that he overthrew his horse dead to the earth. and after took off his helm. *Florent* (said his Brother) flie not, return, or we shall be vanquished, and herewithal they made a fresh Encounter upon *Orson*, and with their Swords laid on so lustily, that the stroaks entred his armour, & drew blood, *Orson* feeling himself wounded, smote off one of *Florant*'s Arms; but yet he gave not over. *Orson* espying him making a blow at him, made as if he would have struck at *garnier*, but suddenly withdrawing his Arm, hit *Florent* in such wise, that he fell down dead to the Earth, and after said unto *Garnier*, Traytor, thou shalt after except thou confess the Treason. Not so, *Orson*, for I will be revenged on thee for my Brothers death: *Hausfray* and *Henry* disliked the match, and said, one of our Nephews is slain, and if he overcome the other, he will cause him to confess the Treason, and thereby bring us in danger. Brother (said *Hausfray*) I will tell you what may be done, as soon as we perceive *garnier* to be overcome, before he confess any thing, we will enter into the Field, and so the Treason shall not be known. Quoth *Henry* be it so. Now are both the Champions at it in the Field. *Garnier* (said *Orson*) you see you cannot escape my hands, therefore confess the Treason, and I will save your life. Boy (quoth *garnier*) thy fair promises are little worth, for seeing I have lost an Ear, I little respect any place of honour; so rather chusing to die valiantly, or conquer thee, I set down my rest, that here I will finish my Fortunes, either to conquer, or be conquered. Agreed quoth *Orson*) and sith death is so welcome to thee, defend thy self, for this shall be the longest day of thy life: And thus he makes at *garnier*, and by strength of arms threw him under him, and pulled off his helm: *Hausfray* seeing there was no way but one, cryed out, *Orson* slay him not, for we know he hath wrongfully accused you, and we will do such justice upon him, as to so foul an Act appertaineth: and *Hausfray* said unto *garnier*, Nephew, confess the Fact, and we will be a means unto

to the King for your pardon. Lord, said *Garnier*, I did put the knife into the King's bed; in speaking these words, *Haufray* drew out his sword and run him thorow; and after said, Lords, let this Traytor be hanged on the Gallows, as he hath well deserved: But Cousin *Orson* I am glad of your Victory, for it proveth you Innocent: And though *Garnier* were my Nephew, yet I will never acknowledge him of my blood. News coming to the Lady *Fezon*, she was glad of *Orson*'s Victory; King *Pepin* also came, saying, Nephew, you have endured dangerous wounds. Uncle, quoth *Orson*, the Traytors are vanquished, and *Haufray* made *Garnier* confess the Treason, & so killed him. Nephew, be ware of that *Haufray*, for he hath surely a hand in it, but for this time I will hold my peace. The King and Barons returned into the City of *Paris*, and made great joy for the Victory: *Haufray* and *Henry* speak well of him, but in their hearts they imagined mischief, which after came to light, and they had their desert, where we leave them, and return to *Valentine* who rode from place to place to find out *Clerimond*. *Valentine*, having travelled long, at last arrived in the City of *Antioch*, thinking to find *Clerimond*. *Pacolet* being with him, could speak their language, and took up their lodging in a great man's house, but the host of the house wes somewhat doubtful, and when they were in the Chamber, he would hearken, Insomuch that at last he understood they were Christians, whereupon he went to the King of *Antioch*, and said: Sir, there are four Christians in my house, that have entered your land without paying Tribute. The King said, thou hast well done, let them be brought before me; so being sent for, he said unto *Valentine*: Christian, I let thee understand, that there be two things, one of which you must take choice of, or else suffer death. What is it (quoth *Valentine*) for I will do any thing to save my life. The King said, you must either renounce your Christian Faith, or else fight with a dreadful Dragon that hath devoured many Men: she is bigger then a horse, winged like a Fowl, feathered like a Griffen, the head of a Serpent, a great sting within her mouth, a fierce look, the skin covered with red scales, and she hath the feet of a Lyon. (Quoth *Valentine*) This is some hideous Monster, yet will I try my fortune against her, if you will but grant me one request, which is, that if I conquer this Dragon, you will then change your *Mahometry*, and become Christian: the King bound it with an Oath that he would, for there were never any returned alive that attempted it. Then *Valentine* caused a Shield to be made, and thereon fastned a great number of long spikes of Steel, a foot long, as sharp as Needles.

This Shield being made, *Valentine* put on Armor, and buckling on his Helm, girded his Sword to his side, took leave of his man, and mounting his Horse, issued out of the City. Being gone, every one got up into their Windows

Windows to behold the Fight. Now they of the City were fain to provide for the Dragon, either the Carkass of a Man or of a Beast, which if they failed of, none durst venture out of the City: but having eaten her prey, she returned to her Den again, without doing any harm. All such Malefactors as any way had deserved death, were continually thrown unto this fearful Monster; but if they had no Malefactors, then they went to the Sea-side for to take up Christians, and they were brought to be devoured by the Dragon.

Now by this time is *Valentine* within the sight of the Dragon, she seeing one come towards her, closed her wings most fiercely, casting out of her mouth smoak like fire. Then he descended from his Horse, and left his sharp Ax at his Saddle Bow, and went towards the Serpent, thinking to have

smiten her, but she lifted up her paw to smite *Valentine*, who subtilly watching his opportunity, lifted up his Shield (armed as you have heard with spikes) and so the *Serpent* broached her Foot upon them, who feeling her self hurt, she cryed out most horribly, drawing back, *Valentine* persued, but when the Serpent see him approach, she rose upon her feet, but that much fearing the Shield, she ran back. The King beholding this, said, see yonder is a most valiant Knight, whom we ought to reverence for his hardiness. Also, the fair Queen *Rozamond* fell in love with *Valentine*, to see him so adventurous. Now grew the Battle fierce & dangerous between

and the dragon, but still she fearing the pricks of the Shield, by which he held her in play, in the one hand he bare his Shield, and in the other his Sword, wherewith he gave the Serpent a marvellous blow under the ear, but with the blow he broke his sword. *Valentine* was in great danger when his Sword was broken, for the beast grew so angry, that with her paw she wrent his Armour quite through. *Valentine* still pursuing her, & drew forth a knife, & struck it in her throat, but she little regarded it: *Valentine* seeing all this do nothing, ran and fetched the Ax at his Saddle bow, & returning unto her, subtilly waiting his advantage, gave the Serpent such a blow with his Ax: that he cut off most part of her tail, whereat she roared most hideously. After this she flew at *Valentine*'s head and pulling off his helm, smote him to the ground, but he quickly getting up, was half amazed at his head being uncovered: *Pacolet* perceiving his master in distress, got into the City, and put himself in Arms, got another Helm, and bare it to his Master; *Valentine* perceiving him, said: Friend, *I* am well nigh spent, go thy ways and commend me to my Friends, for if thou stay here thou must dye with me. But for all this, *Pacolet* came to *Valentine*, and delivered the Helm: the Serpent seeing that, came to *Pacolet* and taking him by the right Leg, pulled him down under her, giving him a push with her paw, that he felt it through his Armor, and had slain him, *had not* Valentine *with his Ax* cut off her Nose, and put out one of his Eyes: these hurts made the Beast mad, and opening her Wing, she flew to the top of a high Rock: Then went *Valentine* to his Helm, thinking to have put it on again, but suddenly the Beast came flying down, and he was fain to cover his head with his Shield, which the Dragon espying, returned again to the Rock. Then *Pacolet* put on *Valentine*'s Helm, and said: Sir, *I* am sore wounded, and must of necessity return to the City, to get some relief, for my health faileth: As soon as the Dragon saw him a great way off, she assailed *Valentine*, and flying directly at his head, thought to have laid hold thereon, *but* Valentine *threw his Ax so right*, that he cut off one of her Wings, whereby she could not fly. The Dragon being down, *Valentine* quickly smote off the other wing; so that the Battle was most violent between them, insomuch that he was not able to lift up his Arm any longer to wield his Ax; but leaving all, he got up into a Tree, to rest his wearied Limbs, and the Beast not able any more to fly, beheld him with a cruel countenance, casting out of her mouth nothing but stinking vapours. *Valentine* being well refreshed, came down, and went towards the Dragon, that ran so fiercely at him: *Valentine* still put the shield before him, & with his Ax cut her left thigh, wherewithal she fell to the Earth. *Valentine* still pursues his stroaks, and ran his Ax so far in her throat, that she fell

down dead. *Valentine* having thus overcome the Dragon, the king called unto him, and said; Of all kts. thou art the most hardy, for by thy valour is our City delivered of a fearful Enemy, that hath much damaged us. With these words they entred the City, and so to the place where a solemn Feast was held. Then the King caused *Valentine*'s Wounds to be carefully healed. The Queen likewise highly honoured him, for she was enamored on him so hotly, that for to gain his love, she would have wrought the Death of the King her Husband.

Valentine having well refreshed himself, and healed his wounds within the City of *Antioch*, he said unto the king: Sir, you remember your promise, that you and your people would receive Baptism, if I overcame the Dragon; you see he is slain by me only. True (quoth the *King*) & look what I promised, *I* will perform: And thereupon sent his present Edict throughout the Land, That every one should forsake his *Mahomet*, and be Baptized. The Queen sent for *Valentine* to her Chamber, who presently went to her, and said, Lady, *I* am come at your Command, & ready to do you service. Ah! said the Lady, thou art of great Hardiness, Wisdom, Strength, and all Valour belonging to a famous Warrior, happy is the Lady that shall enjoy thy love: O that *I* were not a Woman, or a Woman not under subjection: O *I* could love thee beyond humane Reason, had'st thou but so much liberty as to embrace me, or to grant me love. Lady *I* thank you, but you have wedded a puissant king, and him only ought you to love and honour. *Knight*, 'tis true, *I* have been ever constant to him, but since *I* first beheld thee, all my thoughts were captivated *Valentine* seeing the Queen so eager, replyed, Lady, if the king should but know or suspect me, *I* should surely be put to death. Again, he is old, you are young, rest your self content till *I* return from my intended Journey, to the holy Sepulchre, and then if the *King* be dead, *I* willingly give my self unto you. Hereupon she played the part of many women that are weary of their Husbands, for the love of others: even so began this Queen to practice: for one night, as the Queen was going to bed, a cup of Wine was brought unto her, as the custom was, wherein she had conveyed poyson, and after presented it unto the *King*: But he having some doubt thereof, disliked it, saying, Lady, look what drink you have brewed, either drink it your self, or tell me what you have put into it. The Lady being in this perplexity, knew not what to say, but falling on her knees, craved pardon, and said that *Valentine* procured her to do it. *I* do believe thee, quoth the *King*, and pardon thee; so they lay together that night, but she still requested, that *Valentine* might be put to death: He shall as sure as *I* live, quoth the *King*. She hearing the *King* say so, was very sorrowful, and secretly calling to one of

her Maidens, sent to *Valentine*, to tell him her Will, and what the king had decreed against him: *Valentine* hearing of this Accusation, whereof he was innocent, said; What will not a Woman undertake? Now for the love of the Queen must I depart like a traytor, or else lay her shame open to the World; well, I will rather depart with dishonour to my self than her. And therewithal calling up his Attendants, before the morning, he departed the City, and came to the Sea-side, where lay a Ship full of passengers ready to put off, in amongst the rest goes he and his company; so hoisting Sails they departed. On the morrow when the king was up, he caused all his Nobles to be assembled, & said unto them, Lords, I am most deceived in the man whom I most trusted, and he whom in heart I held deareſt hath betrayed me, *Valentine* I mean, who for to gain the lawless love of my Queen, hath stirred her up to poyson me; therefore let us proceed to judge him some shameful death.

Amongst the rest an aged wise Baron said, We have no reason to proceed against an Offender, without calling him to answer. Again, were he never so great an Offender, we ought to hear him. Whereupon *Valentine* was sent for, but instead of *Valentine* came his host, who told them *Valentine* was gone before break of the day from his house, but whither he knew not. The King hearing this sent forth men to follow and pursue him; but all in vain, for he was past their reach on the Sea. Shortly after that the king of *Antioch* was converted, his Wifes Father *Brandiffer*, a Turk, had so great a spleen against the king for altering his Religion, that he sent to him for his Daughter *Rozamond*. When the king heard this unjust demand, he gain-said him; hereupon *Brandiffer* came upon him with 100000 Pagans, and besieged his City. At last, within the compass of four Months, by treason he obtain'd it, took the king prisoner, and suddenly put him to death, and Crowned himself king of *Antioch*. This done, he returned into his Realm, but as he was on the Seas, by a tempest he was forced into the Land of *Greece*, into a little City called *Cretophe*.

Within this City by chance was the Emperor of *Greece* newly arrived then, and he & the *green knight*, with some other company rid forth to sport themselves, not knowing of the Pagans being there, fell into the hands of *Brandiffers* Souldiers, and having gotten them, hasted towards the gates of the City, thinking to have seized the whole City, but they found it manfully defended. The men of *Cretophe* were very sorrowful for the loss of the Emperor and the Green kt. At last they determined to send Letters unto *Bellisant* of what had happened, & to demand aid against these Pagans. The Lady receiving these Letters, was wonderous sad, and sending for their Captains, & men of War, made preparation for a speedy revenge. Also she

sent for her son *Orson*, and craved aid of her Brother *K. Pepin*: but *Brandiffer* had scouts abroad to give him notice of all that happened, and fearing the force of the *Greeks*, and their Prisoners loss, they stole to the Sea-side; so taking ship, they in a short time *arrived* in *Lize*, in which *place they* took a *Castle*, *wherein* was *kept* his two *Daughters*, *Rozamond* and *Galazy*, who for her beauty had *been* demanded of fourteen Kings: *Brandiffer* had yet no meaning to marry her, wherefore he caused her to be kept within this Castle, for it was the strongest in the Land; for it had a Bridge made by such cunning Art, that but one could pass at a time: at the end of this Bridge two fierce Lions stoop to keep the entry into this Castle: The Lady *Galazy* was kept in a Dungeon, under which was a Cave, wherein the Emperor and the *Green Kt.* with other Christians, which had *been there* a long time, were put. *Where leave we them*, and we shall shew you somewhat of the Lady *Clerimond*, which still remained in *Indie*.

Chap. XXXVI. *How* Clerimond *after the year was past, feigned her self mad, because she would not Wed the King of Indie: And of* Lucar *that would revenge the death of his Father King* Trompart, *upon the King* of *Indie*: How *King* Lucar *in the City* of Esclariana *wedded* Rozamond, *the fair Daughter* of Brandiffer: How Valentine *departed from* Esclardy, *to breath out Defiance*: of *the Answer he brought from the Indian King*: How Rozamond *found a way* to *be taken, and led unto the Indian King*: How King Lucar *caused* Brandiffer to *stay with him, and sent* Valentine *into* Angory against King *Pepin*: how King *Pepin* took the City of *Angory*.

YOU have heard already of the death of *K. Trompart*, who stole away the Lady *Clerimond* upon *Pacolet*'s horse: also how she got pardon for one whole year before she would marry. Now is the time expired, and all this while appeareth no succour for her relief, which she had so long expected, therefore (poor lady) now is she put to her shifts, & to save her Maiden-head, she feigned her self very sick. This News coming to the king's Ear, that the fair *Clerimond* was extream sick, at which he grew very sad, and came to visit her, at last he would have put his hand about her head, to have held it, but she refusing, took his arm away, and lift up her head her self, making signs that she would bite him, at which action he wondred, and grew much astonished thereat? After this she rowled her Eyes up and down, and made grievous faces in such wise, that the king got him out of the Chamber, fearing least she should prove mad. In this manner she abode a long time, and she did act the matter so well, that within fifteen days she seemed more like a beast than a Woman: she made all her Attendants forsake her, for if she caught them she would leave some mark behind her; so they left her alone, giving her meat at the Window, for none would come near her. One while she put her Smock upermost, anon she bedawbed her face with soot,

soot, and in this estate the king came and beheld her, lamenting her distemper, and said unto her; Lady, now is the time come that I should have had you to Wife, therefore be comforted, and be not thus impatient.

The Lady understanding him well, made shew as if she would beat him, but then she fell into a strange fit of madness: one while she would run against the Chimney another while fall into a great laughter, then sit down and make faces, and all to preserve her Chastity. Many ways was tryed for her recovery, yet none prevailed: so leave we her in her Chamber, & return to *Valentine*, who with an ardent desire is roved abroad, accompanied with *Pacolet*, to find out the Lady *Clerimond*, & now were they arrived in *Esclardy*, which was the kingdom of *Trompart*, who carried away the Lady on *Pacolet*'s Horse. Being in the City they asked for *King Trompart*, so they told him he was slain by the King of *Indie*, and that now at this present, *Lucar* his Son would revenge his death upon the King of *Indie*, & to that end he hath newly mustered up his powers, and waged many Royal Kings to undertake this War. Then spake *Pacolet*, who well understood the Language, saying, Of what account is this King *Lucar*? for the Host where he lay told him, that he should shortly marry with the daughter of *Brandiffer*, that was late Wife to the King of *Antioch*, who was slain by *Brandiffer*, for that he forsook his Religion.

At this Tale *Valentine* was much abashed, and wondred at this sudden alteration, but at last he said; what is become of the Lady that King *Trompart* did bring with him? Of her we hear no tydings (quoth the Host) tell me then where is King *Lucar* at this present, I would fain serve under him for Wages, for *my* mony is fallen short, & I have a great desire to follow the Wars, Marry, said the Host, King *Lucar* is in *Esclardy*, and there you shall find him accompanied with a huge Host, attending *Brandiffer* to receive his Daughter in Wedlock. *Valentine* knowing all this, he hoped to hear of *Clerimond*, & so he departed, and came to *Esclardy* to serve King *Lucar*.

Lucar being in the City of *Esclardy*, thither came *Brandiffer* with his daughter, at sight of whom K. *Lucar* was joyful, but the Lady was sad, for of all others she could never affect him. The Lady was led into the Hall, & there married unto K. *Lucar*. *Valentine* was abroad, & entering a Wood, he heard the crying voice of a Woman, whom a Sarazen would have ravished: *Valentine* still heard the cry, and said unto *Pacolet*, Ride faster, for this cry is more and more in *my* Ear, and we shall do a Charitable deed, in relieving the oppressed. Sir said *Pacolet*, meddle not in this matter, for you know not what danger *you may* be drawn into. *Pacolet*, thou speakest foolishly, for he is not worthy the name of a Knight, that will not aid in time of necessity; so he rode up and down the Wood, till at last he lighted

on a Sa[illegible]azen, that had gotten a Lady under him. Then *Valentine* said: My [illegible]riend, forsake your Lady, and betake you to your arms to combat with me, for you may well perceive she loveth you not. By *Mahomet* (quoth the Pagan) I accept thy challenge, and will make thee know, that in an evil hour thou cameſt hither. These words past, he left the Lady, and mounted his Horse, and then he took his Shield and Spear, and being prepared, they set out one at the other so fiercely, that *Valentine* ran his Spear quite through the body of the Pagan, insomuch as he fell down dead. Then went *Valentine* to the Maiden, saying: Damosel, now is your Enemy laid in the dust, but I pray shew me the cause why this man brought you into this Wood: sir, I will tell nothing save the truth; yester-night late he came to my Father's house to lodge, and there attempting the use of my body, but could not, he departed from me, and went into the chamber of my Father, and there slew him. Afterwards he thought he should surely have got his will on me in this manner as you see, from which by your Manhood I am freed, and mine honour saved; do with me what pleaseth you, for your body hath Ransomed mine; and besides, as you have won me, I yield me to your pleasure. Damsel, by me thou shalt receive no wrong, return unto your house, and keep well your Chastity. So *Valentine* left the Maiden, and took his way towards *Esclardy*.

This slain Pagan had certain attendants, which were gone to seek him, & as soon as they found him dead, they told his misfortune to the King, saying: Our Master (& your Marshal is slain in the Wood. The King was hereat right heavy, and presently sent out a search, to see if they could find the Murtherer. At last *Valentine* & his company was taken, bound, & beaten by the king's command. Now in this Castle was *Roxamond*, who knew *Valentine*, & was very sorrowful for him, and anon she went unto the king, and said: Alas Sir! do this kt. no harm, for I vow, he is the valiantest kt. breathing, he is called *Valentine* of *France*, that slew the mighty Dragon of *Antioch*; make much of him, & retain him into your service, for his fellow lives not in the world. Lady (said the King) divers times have I heard talk of his prowess, and I have much desired to have a sight of him: Then he called *Valentine* to him, & said: Kt. fear not death, but know, that above all men, I love and hold you dear, you and all yours I receive into my pay: yet one thing still remaineth, that you must do for me; Go into *India*, & defie the King thereof in my Name, telling him: that I am ready prepared to avenge the death of my Father, whom he hath shamefully put to death, except he come presently before me, with a cord about his neck, ready to receive the sentance as by me, & my Barons shall be imposed on him: if he deny it, tell him, I will shortly visit him & his Land with War, and

not leave one Town or Village unransaked; nor spare the life *of* any. Sir (said *Valentine*) all this *I* shall gladly do, altho' *I* know it to be dangerous. Then Q. *Rozamond* seeing *Valentine* ready to depart, entred into her Chamber, and by one of her Damsels, sent for him; & she said to him: Sir you are welcome, for *I* had a great desire to see you. So had *I* Lady (*quoth* Valentine) as great a desire to see you: For since *I* saw you, *I* understand your Husband is dead, & that you are married again. Lady *you* know that for the love of you (within *Antioch*) I sustained much danger of life: 'Tis true (said the Lady) & I acknowledge my self guilty; but now hath my Father bestowed me on K. *Lucar*, who is rich above measure, yet can I not fancy him; he is a perfidious traytor, and since *you* entred this Palace, he grew so jealous of *you*, that he sends *you* into *Indie*, trusting *you* never shall return again, for never yet came any back: But I will circumvent him, & set *you* free from danger: Therefore know this, that not long ago, the King *of Indie* requested me for his Wife; & the truth is, *I* loved him better than this traytor, but my Father crossed me in it: Now this K. *of Indie*, in token of love, sent me a Ring, which hitherto *I* have kept, & not shewed to any save your self; but seeing *I* perceive his malice towards *you*. *I* will give *you* that which shall defend *you* from danger, and make you return a victorious knight; and tho' *I* am assured *you* have no need of *my* love, in that *you* have promised it to another Lady; *yet I* cannot forget my heart, which for your love lies enthralled: Therefore, when *you* come before the king of *Indie*, after reverence made, & salutations from King *Lucar*, next greet him from me, as *my* Love and secret friend, & tell him, tho' *my* Father hath given me to king *Lucar*, yet his love cannot once slip out of *my* breast, but still hath assurance, and full hope one day to meet with him again, when as we may enjoy our wished pleasures; tell him also, that when king *Lucar* bringeth his Host, *I* will come with him; & then if there be any valour in him, he *may* carry me away whither he will. Now to the end he shall not find your words to be in vain, bear him this Ring. Lady (*quoth* Valentine) for your care, love, and good will towards me, *I* humbly thank *you*, & have no doubt, but that *I* shall deliver your message so effectually to the *K. of Indie*, that *you* shall shortly receive Answer thereof. So taking his leave, he went to *K. Lucar*, who allowed him ten Marriners to conduct him over an arm of the Sea, that lyeth between *Esclandy* & *Indie*; so that having a prosperous wind the next morning they arrived at a Port two miles from the Palace of the *K. of Indie*. Then *Valentine* being arrived, he drew forth his Horse out of the Ship, & backed him; and said unto the Marriners, abide here till my return, for it shall not be long e'er *I* be dispatched. One of the Marriners said unto the rest; if he return, the Devil

must bring him, for of fifty Messengers, not one returned again: *Valentine* over-heard this muttering speech, but made no answer: So he took his way to the *City*, and when he was near the Palace, he alighted off his Horse, & went to the King, who was in his Hall, richly adorned, accompanied with three Kings. As he came up the Hall, the King saluted him with a wrinkled brow, and thought he was a Messenger of king *Lucar's*, & said aloud to him: Art thou not a Servant of King *Lucar's*? Sir (said *Valentine*) I am, & bring *you* tydings that will fret your heart; but on the other side, I bring such gladsome news, from the fair *Rozamond*, that your very soul will leap to hear it: Messenger, know this that in the spight of *K. Lucar* thou shouldst have suffered death, but for the love & reverence I owe to that Lady, thou shalt receive no injury, if so be, that thou canst shew me some token from her. Yes (*said* Valentine) that I shall shew, and deliver *my* message so, that I will not swerve from the truth thereof. That I belong to *K. Lucar*, you know, who by me sendeth these words; That for the death of his Father, You must come & yield to his mercy, with a Rope about Your Neck, as a man guilty of so foul a deed, to receive sentance of Death, according to Your desert; if You refuse it (as a Messenger) I breath Defiance against You, and tell You he will shortly come, and lay wast Your Land, & ransack Your Dominions: Messenger, I understand thee, and set light by these his hold threats: & for answer to this matter, thou shalt have letters, wherein shall be explained how little we regard his Menaces, and also how ready I am to receive his Forces that shall come to whip my Land: Therefore leave you these proud brags, & return to that thou hast to *say* concerning the fair *Lady Rozamond*, for I most of all desire to hear from her: Sir (*said* Valentine) on her behalf I salute You as her love, & she sendeth You word that she is against her will married to King *Lucar*, whom she never loved. Again, the poor *Lady* is so burthened with love towards You, that if she might have her will, You should soon perceive, that none should enjoy her but Your self; for she told me that she will come hither, in the company of the King her Husband, when he taketh up Arms to invade you; & then may You find other means to accomplish Your desire; By *Mahomet* (said the *Indian* King) this pleaseth me extreamly: Sir (*said* Valentine) whether these come from a true heart or no, I cannot tell; but for token that all is true that *I* have said receive here a Ring which You gave unto her, and tho' Women do prove variable, yet methinks she speaks of you from her inward breast: Friend (quoth he) this is the same Ring indeed, & my heart is overcome with joy, go thy ways in, and take thy repast, while, in the mean time, *I* get the letters ready, thou shalt take with thee to answer this defiance. *Valentine* went in as the King commanded, and was highly feasted, and

and he ſtill demanded after *Clerimon*, but could not hear of her. By this time came the king, & delivered unto him the letters, & *Valentine* taking his leave of him, knew not that his love was in the Court, who abode many evil days for the love of him, & ſtill deſired to hear ſome news of him. In the end he ſhall find her, but he muſt ſuffer many tribulations, & hard Atchievments. *Valentine* made great haſt to be freed out of *India*, and taking horſe, he came to the Heven where the Marriners ſtaid; at his coming they were amazed, & thought that he had not done his meſſage: Maſters (*quoth* Valentine) fear nothing, for I have accompliſhed my meſſage, & I am ſafely returned. Then the Marriners ſaid, we much marvel thereat. At theſe words he took Ship, and on the morrow they were in *Eſclavdy* *Valentine* made no ſtay, but as ſoon as he had deſcended his Horſe, he went to the palace of the king, finding him there accompanied with king *Brandiffer*, and fourteen other kings that were come to the ſuccour of king *Lucar*, againſt the *Indian* king: At the return of *Valentine* they wondered, for the king ſent him of purpoſe never to return, wherefore he made *Valentine* come before them all, to tell what tydings of his meſſage. *Valentine* began thus to ſay, He regards not all your threats a ſtraw: he is fierce and proud, and ſays if you have a mind to come to him, he hath a greater deſire to receive you, than you have to come; and that you may know that I deliver nothing ſave the truth, here is a Letter ſealed with his own hand, in which you ſhall underſtand his mind more at large. This letter being broke open, they found *Valentine*'s words to be true. King *Brandiffer* underſtanding this anſwer, ſwore by all the gods, that he would never return home again but with victory, or loſs of life.

The next morrow they betook them to the Seas, with an Hoſt of 200000 Sarazens. So the king carried *Rozamond* along with him, and they were quickly there. Being landed, they pitched their Tents in a pleaſant field before the City, whilſt they of the City made faſt the gates. The king himſelf got up into a high Tower to behold their order, ſo by the River ſide he might eſpy their Rich Pavillions, gallantly furniſhed with Arms, and Streamers; then the king called unto him certain Heralds of Arms, to know by thoſe Arms, whoſe Tents they were. The firſt (quoth they) is *Brandiffers*, the ſecond is *Lucars*, and the third is *Rozamonds* with her Ladys, when the king underſtood that *Rozamond* was there, his heart leapt for joy, and ſaid, it is no time to ſleep now, he that will have the love of a fair Lady, muſt venture life and goods, or elſe he is not worthy of her that will take no pains. Hereupon reſolving, he preſently put his men in Battel array, and ſuddenly iſſued out of the City upon his Enemies, ſo that they were not in a readineſs, for they little thought the *Indian* had been

so fierce; but love made him to do it. When the King saw *Brandiffer* ordering his men in Battel Array, he left his Companions, & with much diligence rode towards the Pavillions of the Ladies: When *Rosamond* beheld it was he, she gave all the Rest of her company the slip, and ran violently into his Arms, who joyfully received her. The *Indian* perceiving her goodwill, got her up behind him, and putting spurs to his horse, she said, My love is fixed only on you, & for your love have I long mourned, for I never hated man so much as I did King *Lucar*, but now I pray thee, let me bid him farewel, & I will keep my self only to thee so long as I live. Lady quoth the *Indian*, doubt not, for I will not fail you, & here I vow, e'er three days pass, you shall be Queen of *Indie*, & mistress of all my lands. These words passed as he wis riding away with the Lady *Rozamond*. At last the guard of the Maidens came out of the Pavillion, & ran to the King, saying, My Lord there is evil Tydings, for this day you have lost the Lady *Rozamond*, for the King of *Indie*, your utter Enemy, hath stolen her hence, & is rid away with her, wherefore quickly send your men of war & follow him, that they may save the honour of the Queen. Hold your peace, said *Lucar*, & talk no more, for he that hath an evil Wife, it is well if he can be rid of her, altho' he had a heavy heart. After this he went to King *brandiffer*, and said, Sir, I have small Joy of your Daughter, who hath left me, to run away with a stranger, and one that is my Enemy, leaving me in reproach and shame. Faith Son (said *brandiffer*) be not discontent at me, for to day I will be revenged on him that carryed her away, so putting spurs to his horse, rid after him, gathering a great company of men. Amongst the rest *Valentine* was one willing to shew his Fidelity, who said unto *Pacolet*, now shew me by thy Art somewhat. Then *Pacolet* raised such a Charm, which so astonished the *Indians* Eye-sight, that it seemed to him there was nothing before his horse but Woods, Bushes and great Rivers. At this he was amazed, that he made the Lady alight; When the Queen was on the ground, she thought she should have had means to save her life with the King, but *Valentine* was so near to her, that he said unto her; Lady, abide, for you must go with me, for that you have a long time promised me your love. Ah *Valentine*, I owe you but little love, for once I made love unto you, & you refused me, wherefore I was forced to seek another, but seeing I am crossed thus, I yield my self as your Vassel, so you will make my peace with *Lucar*.

Lady (said *Valentine*) I will do my endeavour; so he led her to K. *Lucar*, & said unto him; Sir, here is the Lady *Rozamond* your wife, whom the *Indian* Traytor had led away against her will, for which she was right sorrowful. Sir (quoth the Lady) he telleth you true, for fore-ever as the bat-

tel

tel was began, I saw one come to me, thinking it had been one of your Barons, that had come to succour me, & without any further enquiry mounted on his horse: being on horseback, I perceived that then I was betrayed, so I struggled & pull'd him by the Hair, & scratched him by the face, & forcing him to let me go, I have by the help of this good Knight escaped. Lady (said *Lucar*) you have well done: So he left the Lady, & returned to the Battle. They of *Indie* returned into the City, who had lost divers valiant leaders, but nothing so fretted the *Indian* at the heart, as did the loss of *Rosamond*. Alas Lady (said he) I have failed thee in thy greatest extremity, but I was surely enchanted, and on the sudden methought I saw Woods, Fields, and Rivers, for she was no sooner down upon the ground, but all was plain and even way before me: *Valentine* had great praise for getting again the Lady, and she shewed him a fair countenance, in that he had succoured her; but it was all feigned, for she hated him to death, and putting up this mischance, she watched her time, and in the end accomplished her desire, and brought her will to Excecution; for some four hours after, she rode forth pretending to take the Air, but took her way towards the K. of *Indie*, and had given him intelligence of her intent, willing him, that when he saw her out of danger, suddenly to come and seize her as his prisoner, and carry her away, The King did according to her direction: so suddenly issuing out of a Postern, he came and took her horse by the head, and led her into the City. Hereupon began a Cry throughout the Host of King *Lucar*, that *Rosamond* was suprized, and she was past recovery. This madded *Lucar* at the heart, and gave out, that whosoever would recover her out of his hands, should be made a great Seneshal: Sir (said *Pacolet*) if you please to atchive dignity, I will so work, that we will fetch her back? Nay, said *Valentine*, let her go. Once I regained her, thinking that she would have been constant unto her husband, but all was in vain. The same day that the King had her, he lay with her, and begat a Son called *Rabestre*, who afterward had the possession of *Jerusalem*. *Lucar* was right sorrowful for the loss of his wife, but *Brandiffer* his Father recomforted him, saying, Son take courage, and let us now be revenged before we depart, but it fell out otherwise, for that day came a messenger to him, who brought him contrary tydings, which was that King *Pepin* of *France*, and the Emperor of *Greece*, was entered his land, burning and spoiling many places, and were now upon the siege of *Angory*, in which City his Lady now lay in Child-Bed: Therefore you must presently take a course to restrain the fury of the Enemy, or else endure such wracks as were lamentable to behold.

Brandiffer hereat amazed, went unto his Son *Lucar*, and said, Son, here is evil tydings befallen, the *French* are entered my Land, wasting

and destroying all things, therefore I must leave you, to look after mine own; but let me tell you what you shall do; send some Kt. unto the *Indian*, to demand your wife, upon this condition, that you will first forget the death of your Father, and that you will raise your Siege, and be gone. Wherefore he sent *Valentine* unto the K. of *Indie*, to declare this message. He being come before him, said, Great K. I am come from King *Lucar*, who says, that if you will restore his wife back again, he will forget his Fathers death, and will raise up his Siege & be gone. To whom the *Indian* thus replyed: If he will have a wife he must go seek another, for he shall never again enjoy her: *Valentine* having thus received this answer, he departed and came to K. *Lucar*, telling him all that the *Indian* had said, which grieved him to the very heart.

Lucar having by this means caused *Brandiffer* to stay with him, sent *Valentine* & *Murgalant* to raise the Siege, which King *Pepin* had laid against *Angory*. And as they were under Sail, *Valentine* espying a glistering, asked what it might be. Then the Marriners described the manner & fashion of it to him. Now they were come within the sight of K. *Pepin*'s tents, and *Murgalant* having viewed the Christians Forces, found the number to be great: Then said *Valentine*, let us secretly send to the City, to acquaint them with our coming, that to morrow Morning they may issue out at that side, and we will back them on this side, that none may escape our hands. *Pacolet* standing by, said, Let me be the Messenger, for I can speak their Language. Quoth *Murgalant* go thy way: So *Pacolet* departed, but (he said to himself) by to morrow night you will sing another Song. *Pacolet* being come to the very Gates of the City of *Angory*, the Warder said, Whither goes this Fellow? He looks as if he were some Spy; 'tis true (qd. *Pacolet*) but I am not for your hurt, therefore bring me into the Host of K. *Pepin*, that I may speak with my Lord *Orson*; for I have a matter of great import to acquaint him with. So they brought him into the presence of *Orson*, who espying him, was right Joyful, and said: How fares my Brother *Valentine*? Then *Pacolet* told him of all his adventures that he had passed since they saw one another; and also how valiantly and wonderfully he had overcome the Serpent, & how he could hear no tydings of *Clerimond*, and told him that they were now come to bear Arms against them, accompanied with 100000 Pagans, under the Conduct of *Valentine* and *Murgalant*, and to chase you out of these confines, by the command of K. *Lucar*, & K. *Brandiffer*; but if you will be ruled by me, I will send the Pagans short home. Qd. *Orson*, do as thou hast said, and win immortal praise to thy Posterity: Sir, said *Pacolet*, I am bound in all duty to your Brother *Valentine*, but the Service I shall now undertake, will highly please you; first

stand

stand you still upon your Guard, and in the night put all your Men in readiness, and for that *Valentine* shall not be suspected to be in the Plot, he shall continue in his Tent, whilst *I* cast a strong sleep on the Sarazens, and then may you come upon them, and slay every Man. It is good, said *Orson*; so *Orson* led him to K. *Pepin*, to make him acquainted with the Enterprize, & *Pacolet* was Royally Entertained for that time: Now *Pacolet*, to the end there should grow no mistrust, gave certain signs to *Murgalant*. Being in the City, he found out the Admiral *Burnas*, and Saluted him with great Reverence, and delivered unto him the Message which he brought from *Murgalant*, which was, that of *Brandiffer*'s part were now arrived 100000, and *Murgalant* sends you word by me, that to morrow betimes you have your Men in a readiness, to assail the Christians on the one side of the City, and *Murgalant* will assail them on the other, thereby to hem them up, that not a Man of them Escape. The Admiral was glad to hear these tydings, but knew not how this should come to pass; *Pacolet* took his leave of him, & returned back to *Murgalant*, with Salutations from the Admiral: So *Murgalant* gave him great thanks for his Message, and *Pacolet* departed secretly to speak with *Valentine*. When he was come, he said thus unto him; your Brother *Orson*, and your Uncle K. *Pepin*, greet you well by me, to whom *I* have related the whole manner of your comming, because *I* would know the Plot he had in hand, for he durst not reveal any Treason unto *Valentine*. The night is come, wherein this bloody Stratagem is to be acted, so *Valentine* commanded the Watch to be strongly set, and would be in the Watch himself; but *Pacolet* found a way to prevent him, and caused him to abide in his Tent. *In* the dead time of the night *Pacolet* went amongst the Pagans, and cast such a Charm that they fell asleep. This opportunity was not let slip by K. *Pepin*, for he with his Army Entred the Host with 60000 fighting Men, and set Fire amongst the Tents and Pavilions, and killed all that resisted: At last they came to the Tent of *Murgalant*, who lay asleep in his bed, and being suddenly affrighted, skiped out, and one received his body on a Dart, and so he fell down Dead.

This assault being given on the *Sarazens*, *Pacolet* said unto *Valentine*, seek to save your self, for the Christians have killed the watch, & entred the Host. *Pacolet* (*said* Valentine) thou hast made me break my promise with *Brandiffer*, for which *I* shall surely dye. Fear not, qd. *Pacolet*, for he shall do no harm. The morrow *Burnas* issued out of *Angory*, and set upon *Pepin*'s Host, who knew not what had hapned. The Battel grew both fierce & long: At last the Admiral couched his Spear, & running against a knight of *Bay*, struck him stark dead; after that, with his Sword, he slew *Gyrald* of *Paris*: then came he against *Robert* of *Normandy*, and lopt off his Leg.

At last King *Pepin* met with him, and couching his spear, run him quite thorow: The Pagans seeing their Admiral dead, retired into the city, the Christians following them; but they defended themselves so valiantly with shot, that the Christians were fain to forsake the Walls; but by some other Stratagems they won the City, putting all the *Sarazens* to the Sword: in this City was great Riches, which was divided among the Soldiers.

Chap. XXXVII. *How* Valentine *returned back to* indie, *after the battle, and bare with him the dead body of King* Murgalant: *how he heard tydings of his Father: how* pacolet *freed the* Indian *King, and left* Brandiffer *in Prison: how K.* Lucar *caused all that hunared that watched the* indian, *to be drawn to death at horses Tails: how* Valentine *and* pacolet *departed secretly out of his Host, and went to* Angory, *and of the vision of King* pepin: *how he went into the Holy-Land with the twelve Peers of* France, *and what happened: how* Haufray and Henry *betrayed their Father* King pepin, and *the twelve peers of* France. *How* Caliph *of* Bendas *made truce* between *the* indian, Lucar, Brandiffer, and how *he was trapped* in *his* own *Net.*

THE City being taken by the Christians, *Valentine* found the body of *Murgalent* in the Field, caused it to be put up, and covered with black After certain days sail, they arrived where *lucar* and *brandiffer* were, and in mourning brought it before the two Kings; as thy sat playing at chess: As soon as King *lucar* saw *Valentine*, he said: Kt. welcome home, how fareth and speedeth our Forces, have you put all the Christians to the worst, and taken K. *pepin*, and his Nephew *Orson*? Alas (said *Valentine*) it is fallen out contrary; for we have lost the Field, and all our men are slain: For K. *Farin*, who had the whole charge of the Watch, let his men sleep, & so the Christians came, and made great havock of our Army: As soon as I got tydings hereof, I awaked my men, hoping to save them; but it was too late. In this battel was slain your Uncle *Murgalant*, whose body I have here brought: This spectacle fretted *brandiffer* at the heart, that in madness he threw away the chess-board, and said, surely *Valentine* thou wert the cause of this Qd. *Valentine*, I return him the lie that says so, and I will maintain my innocency with my Sword. Nay (said K. *Lucar*) if he had plotted any Treason, he would never have come again; then *brandiffer* commanded the body to be Royally enterred. This News gladded the *Indian*, & hereupon gathering up all his Forces, he issued forth of the City: The battel being begun, *Valentine* threw himself into the thickest, so that none durst stand before him. At last, meeting the *Indian* King, he smote him off his horse: *pacolet* seeing him down, *Valentine* and he led him to the tent of K. *brandiffer*: when tydings came that the *Indian* King was taken, he called unto his men, saying, Follow hard, & the day is our own: so they entered the Battel, and drave the *indians* to a retreat. When *brandiffer* saw they

they with-drew, they followed them to the gates, where fell on both ſides a great ſlaughter: the battle laſted ſo long, that it was night; ſo *Brandiffer* & *Lucar* betook them to their tents, & bad that the *Indian K.* ſhould be brought before them: when K. *Lucar* ſaw him, he ſaid unto him: Traitor, the end of thy life is now at hand: The *Indian* made ſhift to underſtand him, but ſaid never a word. K. *Lucar* had no ſooner ended his rough ſpeech, but there arrived a meſſenger, who ſaid unto *Brandiffer*, I bring you ſad tydings, O King, for *Pepin* K. of *France*, hath taken your City of *Angory*, & put to the ſword man, Woman, & Child: Theſe are ill Tydings indeed (quoth *Brandiffer*) but ſeeing we have the K. of *Indie* in ſubjection, I hope ſhortly to free my own Country. Then he ſaid to K. *Lucar*: Son, we have the K. of *Indie* in hold, let us make ſhort work with him, & to morrow morning let him be hanged up; which being done, we will ſpeed to *Angory* againſt the *French*, & take vengeance for theſe wrongs done to me: Alſo I have there, in a ſtrong Caſtle, the Emperor of *Greece*, & the Green Kt. priſoners; who at my coming ſhall ſuffer death: *Valentine* being preſent, was glad to hear of his Father; ſo, by a ſign, he acquainted *Pacolet*, that he ſhould very ſhortly ſtand in need of his Art, who inwardly vowed that he would find ſome means to releaſe them out of priſon: alſo the *Indian* King looked wiſtlie on *Valentine*, and ſaid thus to himſelf, Curſed be that hour that thou eſcapeſt my hands, for had I put thee to death, theſe dangers had never befallen me: Then K. *Lucar* called a ſtrong guard of armed Sarazens, & ſaid unto them, keep well this Traytor, & to morrow he ſhall be hanged: So they took him, & brought him into one of the Pavillions, & bound him about the middle to a poſt, & ſo left him, falling to play again: Now *Valentine* called *Pacolet* to him, ſaying; I am half in a doubt whether *Brandiffer* have my Father in hold, for if I were aſſured thereof, I would not have endangered my body, as I have done in his ſervice: But now is the time to be revenged: Sir (*qd. Pacolet*) you have ſmall reaſon to bear good will, therefore (if you pleaſe) I will find a way to free the *Indian* King, & to deliver *Brandiffer* into his hands, ſo may your Uncle *pepin* hold *Angory* ſtill: This (qd. *Valentine*) would be worthy of thanks, wherefore proſecute thy plot, that ſo I may help my Uncle, & deliver my Father: *pacolet* having an eye to what he would do, after Supper, came among thoſe hundred that had the charge of the *Indian* King: After they had made a fire without the Pavillion, *pacolet* caſt them all into a dead ſleep: having ſo done, he went to the *Indian* King, & ſaid: Noble King, be glad in me, for I am *Mahomet*, & am come to ſet the free: Then go thou to thy palace, and bare along with thee *Brandiffer*, who ſhall not know wither he goeth: Alas! ſaid the *Indian* to *pacolet* taking him for

Mahomet

Mahomet, it should seem that I have deserved well at thy hands, when thou tookest so much pains to come down, & deliver me from death: King, said *Pacolet*, trust in me, and believe the counsel of the wise: Herewith *Pacolet* led him towards *Brandiffer*, causing all the Watch to fall into a dead sleep; and so Enchanted him, that he arose, made him ready, and went along with the *Indian* king to his Palace.

The *Indian* being thus set free, gave thanks to *Mahomet* for his delivery: then *Pacolet* brought him a Horse, made him mount, and set *Brandiffer* behind him, and sent them packing for *Indie*, and so took his leave: At last the *Indian* came to the gates of his own City, and calling the Porter, was instantly let in: when *Rozamond* beheld him, she said: Sir, you are right welcome home, but tell me how you came by my Father, that you have brought him with you? is there a peace concluded? No (quoth the King) *Mahomet* delivered him into my hands, and freed me from death: So by this time ended the vigor of the Charm, and *Brandiffer* awaking, began to say, how came I hither? some Devil hath Enchanted me: nay said the King, *Mahomet* hath brought us hither, that you may be at peace with me: I had rather die, therefore set me free, that I may go to my Host again. Not so, for since you are here, I mean to keep you. Now the Sarazens that Guarded the *Indian* lay, still asleep. At the break of day *Lucar* came to the Pavillion where the *Indian* lay but when the Pagans saw him, they cry'd for mercy, for they had lost their Prisoner. Varlets, quoth *Lucar*, your lives shall pay for it, so he caused them to be drawn along the streets, at Horses tails, & after hanged, whereat *Pacolet* laughed, but *Valentine* said, friend, I shall never be at ease till I have found out my Father, whom *Brandiffer* keepeth in prison. Here *Valentine* and *Pacolet* leave the Pagans, and after travel to hear tydings of the Lady *Clerimond*.

You have heard before how K. *Pepin* took *Angory*: So now will I make plain to you the manner of a treason toward him by *Haufray* and *Henry*, It happened as the King was in his bed in *Angory*, he had a dream to this effect: he thought that he beheld a Mass-priest, shewing unto him divers Relicks, besides a sumptuous Sepulchre, and three times this Apparition troubled him: the morning being now come, he called before him all his Barons, and declared unto them the manner of this Dream, and said unto them: Lords, I know not what may befal, but I think it some Delusion; or else it may be that I should go visit the Holy places without the City of *Jerusalem*. Then spake *Orson*, I will go with you if you please; and I also, qd. *Aymon Daugler*: after the Twelve Peers offered themselves unto him, to assist him in his Pilgrimage. The King hearing them so forward, gave them thanks, and calling before him *Haufray* and *Henry*, he said unto them,

you

you know that you are my natural ſons, but yet in ſuch time was you gotten, when I had not one foot of Land in *France*, therefore it is my will, you enjoy this land of *Angory*, therefore keep it valiantly. Then *Haufray* ſaid to *Henry:* You underſtand the King our Father well, do you not? he will prefer us to ſtrange Lands; as if we were not worthy to be his Sons: now as for his young Son *Charles*, he provideth to leave him K. of *France*, and we muſt be content with a Foreign part: Therefore be rul'd by me, & *Pepin* ſhall never return into *France*, to eſtabliſh his heir. We will work a plot to deliver him into the hands of the Pagans, and then ſhall we be Kings of *France*, and Emperors of *Rome*; all which I thirſt after. Brother (qd. *Henry*) your words are well put together, but how ſhall this thing be accompliſhed: *Haufray* ſaid, I ſhall tell thee how, go unto K. *Brandiffer*, and tell him that I muſt have his daughter *Galazy*: and being with him tell him that K. *Pepin* and the twelve Peers of *France* do determine to go to the Holy Sepulchre, & they may be eaſily ſurprized, for they take along with them but few in train. Brother this will do well, wherefore make haſt to *India*, there ſhall you find *Lucar* and *Brandiffer*: When you have found them, acquaint them with the Plot, & I will go along with them: So, ſo, (*qd.* Haufray) for I ſhall never be quiet till this buſineſs be finiſhed. Thus had they plotted treaſon againſt their Father, who now was on the Seas, thinking to accompliſh their Pilgrimage. *Henry* going along with them, and *Haufray* hath likewiſe taken his way toward *India*. So leave we them, and return to other matters. The *Caliph of Bendas* being come into the Hoſt of *Brandiffer*, and *Lucar* treated a truce for a month, between them and the K. of *India*: ſo appointing a day for to meet thereupon, the *Caliph* began thus to ſay: Lords, it is known unto you that the Chriſtians have won the Realm of *Angory*, I wonder that you continue here maintaining a needleſs War, & ſuffer the Enemy to grow upon you in a place of ſuch Import: therefore liſt a while to what I ſhall declare: True it is that the King of *India* ſlew your Father *Trompart*, for that he killed his Uncle, this was one for another. Therefore let the *Indian* deliver *Brandiffer*, and as for *Rozamond*, let her be brought and ſet between the two kings, *Lucar* and the *Indian*: and if ſhe will ſtay with the *Indian* let her; if ſhe will go with *Lucar*, let him receive her. This his Counſel was generally accepted, and *Rozamond* was brought forth, whereupon the *Caliph* propounded the matter for which ſhe was called. *Rozamond* having heard what was ſaid, ſhe reſolved to keep her to the *Indian King*; and *Lucar* departed very ſorrowful. The ſame day that the *Caliph* made this confeſſion, *Haufray* came unto the Hoſt of *Lucar* and *Brandiffer*, making haſt to their Pavillions, he ſaluted them, unto whom *Brandiffer* ſaid: What wind hath driven you hi-

ther? Sir (said *Haufray*) that I have to deliver craveth secresie and attention. So they drew from their attendants, and then *Haufray* said: Lords, you know that I am Son to *Pepin* of *France*, and I also understand that you (speaking to *Brandiffer*) have a beautiful Daughter; now if it please you to give me your Daughter in Marriage, I will deliver into your hands my Father, and all the Peers of *France*, that have so much damnified you; for know, that in the habit of Pilgrims they have taken their Journey to visit the Holy Sepulchre at *Jerusalem*, slenderly accompanied; Quoth *Brandiffer*, for these tydings I will give thee my Daughter *Galazy*, but it must be upon condition that you renounce your Faith, Yes, qd. *Haufray*, that shall *I* do; When king *Brandiffer* saw the treachery of *Haufray*, first that he would betray his Father, next forsake his Religion, he with-drew himself to advise with *Lucar* and the *Caliph*, saying to them; You see the treasons of this man, that demandeth my Daughter, how dare *I* trust him that seeketh the death of his Father, & ruin of the whole state of *France*? No, *I* will not make my Peace with such a Homicide, *I* had rather see my Daughters death, than give her to a vile traytor. After these words he called to *Haufray*, and said, Sir, *I* am glad of your coming. & this shall be your task, you shall go to my Daughter, & bear this Letter from me, there pass away your time till we have leasure to resolve on your business. Sir (said *Haufray*) *I* am ready to accomplish your demand. So he delivered him the Letter, & a 100 men to conduct him on his way; After they were at Sea, within few days they came within the sight of the strong Castle where *Galazy* was; when they were come to the Gate, the Porter called to 'em, saying; My Lords, you may not enter without some certain token. Porter, said *Haufray*, tell the Lady we shall satisfie her. The Porter went to the Lady, and said, Lady, without the Gate stand a company of men that fain would enter, & as *I* think they are come form your Father. The Lady bid her Gentleman Usher go know what they were, who did as she commanded; as soon as she understood they came from her Father, she bound up the Lions, & opened the Gate, so *Haufray* entred, and thought all this had been for his good; but it fell out contrary. Being entred the Castle he was brought before the Lady *Galazy*, whose Beauty then amazed him, so that he was not able to speak one word. After some space of time he saluted the Lady, & said unto her; Fair Soveraign, know that for the great renown that *I* have heard of your admirable Beauty, *I* have left my Country, and passed the Seas, to acquaint your Father with that which shall make him happy; and for that you shall find me speak nothing but truth, loe, here is a Letter by me from him. The Lady taking the letter, read it; when she had read it, she beheld *Haufray*, saying, Vassal, *I* have read the *Letter*, & find thee

a Chriſtian, & that thou haſt ſold the life of thy Father, & the twelve Peers of *France*; all this my father certifieth by his letter to me, and commandeth me, that I determine what ſhall be done to thee. Now I ſwear by the Law I profeſs, I will neither take pitty, nor mercy upon ſuch a wretch as thou art; ſo ſhe called to her Officers, & committed him to priſon in a dark Dungeon: *Haufray* ſeeing what had hapned, ſaid; it is a bitter marriage to me; & ſo he was convey'd out of her preſence. Now in the ſame Dungeon lay the Emperor of *Greece* & the *Green knight*; & when they heard they ſhould have another fellow priſoner, the Emperor, as ſoon as he came in, demanded of him whence he was? *Haufray* ſaid, it is no matter of whence, but I am that unhappy *Haufray*, baſtard ſon of K. *Pepin*. Why, qd, the Emperor, I am the Emperor of *Greece*, can you tell me how it fareth with my Brother K. *Pepin*, my two ſons, and with the reſidue of the Peers of *France*? Sir (ſaid *Haufray*) they are in this Country of *Angory*, and have won the ſame in Battle. So leave we them in priſon, and return to *Valentine* and *Pacolet*.

Chap. XXXVIII. *How* Valentine *and* pacolet *came before the Caſtle: How* pacolet *raiſed up the Devil, to ask his counſel about the taking of the Caſtle: How* Brandiffer *brought the Twelve peers of* France *into his ſtrong Caſtle, and impriſoned them: How he Beſieged the City of* Angory. *And how* Brandiffer *having knowledge that* Lucar *was Captive in* Angory, *made meanes to* Valentine, *to deliver him upon ſufficient Ranſom.*

AFter many days ſail, theſe two arrived at the Caſtle, and viewing it ſtrangely, thought it impregnable; at laſt *Pacolet* ſaid, ſir, anon I will tell you more: ſo he went aſide, and caſt a figure, & incontinently there appeared unto him a Devil, who ſaid unto him: Leave off your *Enterprize*, for the Caſtle is not to be taken, but by treaſon, ſo vaniſhed: Suddenly after his departure, there aroſe a great ſmoak about the Caſtle, inſomuch that *Valentine* loſt the ſight of *Pacolet*, & was driven into an amazement. This miſt being diſperſed, *Pacolet* came to *Valentine*, & ſaid: Let us depart, for there is no way to conquer this Caſtle, but by treaſon: ſo they forſook the Caſtle, and went towards *Angory*: Being there, they demanded tydings of *K. Pepin*, but it was anſwered, he was gone to *Jeruſalem* on Pilgrimage; ſo *Valentine* reſolved to ſtay there till his Uncle returned, but all in vain: for by the treaſon of *Haufray*, *K. Pepin* was ſurprized by *Brandiffer*, as you ſhall hear. *K. Pepin* being come to *Jeruſalem*, by the direction of certain guides, they were conducted to the Holy place. During the time of their abode *here* in *Jeruſalem*, came *Brandiffer*, the *Indian King*, & *K. Lucar*, (having had intelligence by *Haufray*) accompanied with a great Hoſt of men, & marched ſo far, that they came to the *K.* of *Jury*, being come unto

him, he did very much marvel at their coming; & after Salutations, demanded the cauſe; Then ſpake *Brandiffer*; Sir, know this, that by a Chriſtian we are informed, that lately there is come into this Holy City, certain Pilgrims, the one of them is K. *Pepin* of *France*, the reſt are the 12 Peers; if it be ſo, we crave your aid & aſſiſtance; for they are unto us mortal enemies, & have taken from me my City of *Angory*, making great ſpoils within my Territories; wherefore we deſire you, that they may be delivered into our hands, that we may proceed againſt them according to our law. Your demand is reaſonable (qd. the K. of *Jury*) therefore let it be done according to your wiſh; for *I* am an Enemy to all ſuch as ſhall deride us, and our Religion. *I* will ſend unto the Patriarch about this matter, & if he have any ſuch *French* Pilgrims, that he preſently bring them before you. The Patriarch being ſent for went unto the Pilgrims, and ſaid, friends, you muſt come before the K. of *Jury*, Hereat *Pepin* grew exceeding ſad, for he thought he ſhould loſe his life; therefore ſaid, *Lords* let us here make *Hen-*

ry our *Lord*, & *I* will wait upon him as his Page, bearing his Hat and Staff; *Henry* being too skilful in treaſons denied it, ſaying, here's *Orſon*, and D. *Myllon*, more worthier than *I*, let them take it upon them. Qd. *Myllon*, ſo you pleaſe *I* ſhall do any thing. Then they took their way toward *the* Pa-

gan

gan that sent for them. D. *Myllon* took upon him the person of the K. and the K. bear his Hat and Staff. The patriarch, after he had delivered them to the K. of *Jury* he departed, & the K. said unto them; It is told me you are all *French-men*, come as Spies, and amongst you is the K. of *France*: Sir (said one of the Company) the K. of *France* is not here: How! not here? (qd. the K. of *Jury*) if he do not shew himself openly, I will commit you all to a grievous death. Then spake *Hen.* It is not I. At these words Duke *Myllon* doubted Treason: & said, Sir, I am the K. of *France*, but withal suffer me to tell you a thing worthy of note; we are all Christians, and it is free for us to go safely, even by your own laws & customs of your country, paying a certain Tribute. Now this Tribute is by us daily paid and observed; therefore you do us much wrong to detain us contrary to your custom. Say what you will (qd. *Jury*) but to Spies there is no such priviledges allowed; & now he calleth forth *Brandiffer* & *Lucar*, & said unto them, Lords, these be the Christian spies, take them, & do with them as pleaseth you, then the pilgrims were laid hold on, and *Brandiffer* said, Lords, let these be conveyed to my strongest Castle, & put them into the deepest dungeon; & let us make haste to *Angery*, & beat out all our enemies, after into *France*, to bring that to our subjection; all this may be easily effected, sith we have all the peers thereof in captivity; so that there is not a man of worth to make resistance: This done, the *Indian* king required he might have the little prisoner to make his Dwarf of, (which was K. *Pepin*) his request was likewise granted, so he took him with him, and loved him exceedingly.

The *Indian* K: taking his leave, every one of the peers lookt pittifully on K. *Pepin*, but durst not speak to him: *Pepin* being on his way with the *Indian*, began thus to lament: How unfortunate am I among them? alas D. *Myllon*, it grieves me most for thee; for thy love towards me hath brought thy self in danger: But for my son *Henry*, I will lay my curse on thee, that refused to relieve thy Father in his extremity: Farewel *Bertha* my wife, and my young son *Charles*, thy case is most dangerous; for what will not Traytors attempt against thee? By this time is the *Indian* come home into his own land. When the Lady *Rozamond* saw his approach, she was right glad, & received him with kindness, at last she threw her eyes on king *Pepin*, and demanded of the king, where he had that little man: Lady (said he) he was given me at *Jerusalem*, being come thither with the king of *France*, *&c.* But now let us return to speak somewhat of *Clerimond*, who was in the Court of the *Indian* king: The king's manner was to send her every Meal of the best meat from his own Table, and one night at supper, called *Pepin* to him, for to carry her provision, saying unto him: Go into the great chamber on the other side of the court, there shalt thou

find a foolish women, bear this from me to her; *Pepin* did as he commanded; but when he saw her in those rags, he said to her: I pitty your distressed estate: when the Lady heard him say so, she said, Friend, pitty thy self; let me alone, I am not what I seem to be: but tell me, art thou a christian? Lady (said *Pepin*) I am; and come from the Realm of *France*. Then the Lady, with a smiling countenance, said: know you then King *Pepin*, & his Nephew *Valentine*? Ay (qd. he) & his Brother *Orson*, & his Father the Emperor of *Greece*. The Lady hearing him say so, began to shed tears, & yet spake, saying, Friend, may I put trust in you? ay, said he, even as well as if I were your natural Father: Then know, all that I have done, is but counterfeit; for I am a Christian, & the woful love of *Valentine*, that was given to him as his Wife, but was betrayed, and stolen away by king *Trompart*: Then she unfolded the manner of all these things. When king *Pepin* heard the lamentable adventures of this Lady, he began to weep, & said unto himself, thus: Ha! what trust is in this World: alas for this poor Lady! *alas for* Valentine! & yet to see it is my chance at last to find her out in this unlookt for adventure: After he had ended these lamentations, he said: Lady, now I understand whom you are, and sith you trusted me with the secrets of your heart, give me leave also a little to shew you who I am: Here you see me, and in what shape I go cloathed; yet know, I am *Pepin*, king of *France*, and by disasterous chance, am fallen into this servitude: *As for* Valentine, he undertaketh dangerous adventures, and continueth still without taking any rest: Now I have knowledge of you, if between us we can make these things known to him, with great joy you may embrace each other: At these words the Lady swounded, but he seeing her recovered, left her, and came unto the king. So here we rest as to this matter, and return to say somewhat of *Brandiffer* and *Lucan* who are buried in leading the twelve peers of *France* to prison.

Brandiffer having the twelve Peers in prison, and with them *Haufray* and *Henry*, the only workers of the treason, came to this Castle, where he told all the whole Enterprize to his daughter, how the 12 Peers fell into his hand: Having finished his tale, he put them into the Dungeon where the Emperor, the Green Knight, and *Haufray* lay: *Henry* was much troubled that he durst not discover his mind to *Brandiffer*; for he was the first that was led into the Dungeon, after him *Myllon Dangler*, who by chance fell upon *Haufray*, which made him angry: Be not angry (qd. he) for their are many more to come down after me, to whom you must give place: *Haufray* knew it was D. *Myllon*, and demanded of him, by what means he came thither? Nay (qd. *Myllon*) I rather wonder how you came here, for I am sure we left you within the City *Angory*. Quoth the traytor, I was taken for a

Spy,

spy, and for that cause I am hither brought. Now are all these Lords sorrowing in prison; but when *Haufray* understood that k. *Pepin* was not among them, he seemed exceeding glad, tho' in his heart could wish his death. Every one looked for nothing but death, save only *O son*, he bare it out comfortably, saying: Lords, let us yet trust to my Brother *Valentine* & *Pacolet*, who by enchantment can do much, but he little knew that the Castle was impregnable. *Brandiffer*, having thus made all sure, called before him his daughter *Galazy*, and said unto her: I must depart to satisfie mine Army; being there, I shall meet with the *Indian* k. & *Lucar*, both which will aid me against the *French*, that holdeth the City of *Angory*, therefore keep well my prisoners, And when he came unto his Army, he found *Lucar* ready, but as for the *Indian* K. he sent his Forces, & came not himself, by reason that *Rozamond* was lately dead. The two Kings gathered up their forces, & took their way towards *Angory*, whither being come, *Valentine* had knowledge thereof, who kept the City for K. *Pepin*. This much amazed the noble *Valentine*, when he saw the tents so nigh him: at last he called *Pacolet* unto him, saying, I wonder i hear not of my Uncle *Pepin*. Fear not (said *Pacolet*) for e'er long we will hear better News; and therewithal departed from *Angory*, and never rested till he came to the Camp of K. *Lucar*, who espying him, demanded of him what news, and what was become of his Master, who so long time he had served? *Pacolet* answered, Sir, he is long since dead, and I come to seek a new master. Qd. *Lucar*, wilt thou serve me? Yes (qd. *Pacolet*.) Thus was he received into his service, but he ill rewarded his new Master, for that same night by Enchantment, he cast *Lucar* into such a sleep, that he carried him into the City of *Angory*. *Valentine* was right glad of this, and *Lucar* being placed before a fire, the enchantment ceased, & he awoke. Being awaked, he became sore astonished to see himself thus betrayed, and at last *Pacolet* said unto him: Master, I am at your service, have you any thing to command me: at the which words *Lucar* grew much enraged, & taking a knife, gave *Pacolet* such a wound, that he fell down dead. *Valentine* seeing this accident was right sorrowful, and said: such another friend shall I never have; false Traytor (qd. he) thou hast slain him that was all my hope, then said *Lucar*, I am glad that Traytor is slain

Now *Valentine* went towards the dead corps, and took out of his bosome a pair of writeing Tables, in which was written the manner of his Art. These tables had *Pacolet* ever made *Valentine* acquainted withal, wishing him that if he out lived him, he should make great account of them; so *Valentine* put them up, and after made use of them: here would *Valentine*, have K. *Lucar* put to death, but being better advised, he was safely kept in prison:

priton, if so be that any worthy personage should be taken by the Pagans, then *Lucar* should serve for ransome of the other. Then *Valentine* caused the body of *Pacolet* to be honourably interred, whose death was bewailed of all. The next morning there arose an out-cry throughout the Army, that *Lucar* was gone no man knew how: amongst the rest *Brandiffer* made great lamentation, till one told him he was in *Angory*, and how he had slain *Pacolet*, *Brandiffer* was glad *Pacolet* was slain, but sorry for *Lucar*; at last calling to him a messenger, he sent to *Valentine* to ask him if he would deliver *Lucar* for K. *Pepin*, the Emperor or *Orson*, or any other of the twelve Peers of *France*; the messenger departed on his way with these conditions, and coming to the City of *Angory*, desired to speak with *Valentine*: After salutations on both parts, he declared his message from King *Brandiffer*, *Valentine* hearing the effect of this message, was much amazed, & said to the messenger, how cometh it to pass, that *Brandiffer* can make choice of all these valiant men? Quoth the Messenger, I think it is not unknown, how K. *Pepin*, accompanied with the 12 Peers of *France*, not long since went to *Jerusalem*, & having among them one Traytor, was delivered into the hands of *Brandiffer*, and by him taken in *Jerusalem*, and committed to prison, wherefore having thus related unto you the truth, said: will you change one prisoner for another? Messenger I shall give answer to thee anon: So entering into the Hall, he assembled unto him all his Council, saying to them: Thus it is, that for our Prisoner *Lucar*, we may have delivered us, either my Father, or my Brother, or my Uncle K. *Pepin*: Now in this cause let us resolve what is to be done. The Lords replied, you are most bound to your natural Father, and therefore we judge it most meet to release him. Lords, qd. *Valentine* you have well advised, but yet I am determined to do otherwise, for you all know that my Mother was wrongfully banished, and so in exile brought me forth, and my brother in the forrest of *Orleance*, where we might both have been devoured of Beasts, if my Uncle *Pepin* had not taken me up. Thus he nourished & brought me up to man's estate: After he made me Kt. and bestowed on me many preferments; therefore I say these things considered, my will is, that my Uncle be set free for *K. Lucar*; he being at liberty, we will quickly work the freedom of my Father, and all the rest. When the Barons had heard the Wisdom of *Valentine*, they agreed all with one voice, that he had nobly spoken. Then called they to them the Messenger of *Brandiffer*, and said: Friend, return this answer to thy Master, that we shall willingly yield the body of *K. Lucar*, upon condition that he deliver unto us the body of *King Pepin*: So the Messenger departed; being returned home, he delivered his message as *Valentine* had delivered it to him, whereupon *Brandiffer* swore by the Gods, he should have his Request.

Chap.

Chap. XXXIX. *How Myllon* Daugler (*who was taken for the K.* of France) *was delivered out* of priſon *in lieu of K.* Lucar: how Valentine *and the Duke of Myllon iſſued* out of Angory, *and* won *the Battel from the* Sarazens: *how K.* pepin *was delevered in change* for *the King* of Indie's *Marſhal, left* Angory, *and returned into* France, *to ſuccour his Wife.*

BRandiffer underſtanding *Valentine's* mind, he ſuddenly diſpatched the Meſſengers to his Daughter *Galazy*, who kept the ſtrong Caſtle, willing her to deliver unto theſe Meſſengers the king of *France*, and let all the reſt alone. The Maiden hearing her Father's mind, readily obeyed, calling before her the Goaler of the Priſon, & commanded him to call forth the K. of *France*, the Goaler went to the priſon, calling for the K of *France*, for i'm commanded to ſet him at liberty. D. *Myllon* hearing him ſay ſo, could not ſo ſatisfie himſelf, but in doubting manner ſaid, I am here, if it be ſo, I am the firſt that muſt ſuffer Death, I am ready to lay it down for my Religion Sir (qd. the Goaler) 'tis no ſuch matter, for you are to be delivered body for body, to Ranſome another Pagan King which reſideth in Captivity amongſt the Chriſtians. When *Henry* heard theſe words, he repented he denyed to take upon him the perſon of the K. Thus D. *Myllon* took his leave with tears: the Emp. of *Greece* ſaid unto him, above all, I pray remember me to my Son *Valen.* and me too, qd. *Orſon*, and tell him in what miſery we be, requeſting him either quickly to work our delivery, or we are not able to endure our lives; *Myllon* comforted them all he might, and ſaid: Lords, I will not return into *France*, till I ſee you at Liberty, & ſo he took his way. Being out of priſon, he went to the Lady *Galazy*, and did unto her reverance, which ſhe kindly accepted, & commended him to his Fortunes: So the Duke went along with the Meſſengers that were ſent for the K. of *France*. When they were come before *Brandiffer*, he ſaid unto him: King, I would have you know wherefore I ſent for you, and to that end I have appointed thoſe Meſſengers that brought you hither, to conduct you into the City of *Angory* to *Valentine*, and in your ſtead ſend me back my Son *Lucar*, as he hath promiſed. Sir (qd. the Duke) all this ſhall be effected to your wiſh, & if he will not deliver K. *Lucar* according to your expectation, I ſhall willingly come again according to your Mercy. Royally ſpoke (qd. *Brandiffer*) I ask no more. So the Duke took leave, and departed with the Meſſengers towards *Angory*. After few days they arrived to the Palace where *Valentine* lay, being in ſight one of another, they kindly embraced. After D. *Myllon* took *Valentine* aſide, and related to him the whole courſe of his Actions, & how K. *Pepin* was led away by the *Indian* king, who knew not who he was, and how that he had taken upon him the king's name, on-

ly to shield him from danger. When *Valentine* heard this, he thanked him for his Deed, and began to recount what a benefit had happened to him, that he was delivered, and the rest left in Bonds; for by your true Loyalty to your Soveraign you are escaped from danger. Then *Valentine* caused *King* Lucar to be brought before him,& said: *K.* Lucar, for this time you are set at liberty, but if ever you happen again into my hands, I shall remember you for the death of my friend *Pacolet*. These words being ended, he delivered him unto the Messengers: Now was *Lucar* delivered, and the D. *Myllon* restored in his stead: *Valentine* having gathered more strength, by adding unto his powers the Dukes company, they gathered all their scattered troops into Battel-array, and with the number of 50000 fighting Men, they issued out of the City upon the Enemy. *Brandiffer* hearing thereof, made up against him, accompanied with twenty four *Kings*, his attendants, all holding him their chief Lord; but their number was so infinite, that the Christians could not come near to do them any harm.

Then *Valentine* resolved to give a new On-set upon the Pagans, & couragiously heartening his Men, he set upon that part where was *Brandiffer*, and *K.* Lucar. In the thickest of the Battel, an Admiral (who was Lord of *Massidon*) espying a French Man making havock with his Sword among the Pagans, he made towards him, and hitting him with his Axe, he clave his Head in two pieces: He was espied by another French Cavalier, who made towards this Admiral, in the presence of *Myllon* D*augler*, smote him dead: For the which Act of Valour *Myllon* knighted him, and said among them all: That he that won Valour should receive the like reward. In this manner continued the Battel all that day. At last they strove on each part which should sound a Retreat first, but neither side would yield, so that they continued all that night, making great fires to give them light. At break of day *the battel began* afresh in most fierce manner, that blood ran down as water in *Channels*.

Valintine and D. *Myllon* behaved themselves right valiantly, on every side they beat down both Horse and Man. But *Valentine* was too forward, for he entred so far into the Enemies Camp, that he came very near the Standard of *Brandiffer*. Being there, the *Indian* Admiral espyed him, who ran so fiercely at him, that he slew *Valentine*'s Horse under him, who perceiving himself unhorsed, lightly got upon his Feet, and with his Sword hewed out a passage, but he could not have escaped, had not D. *Myllon* by chance relieved him with a fresh Horse. So *Valentine* retired himself out of the Battel to refresh his tyred Limbs. When the *Indian* Marshal saw their side had the worst, he by his policy withdrew his Forces, and in the night time drew out of sight; so that at the last they took them to their heels and run away.

Valen-

Valentine perceiving it, told D. *Myllon* thereof, ſo they determined that *Valentine* and his troops ſhould ſet upon the Marſhal, which they did, and fell upon the *Indians* in ſuch furious manner, that they, upon their firſt adventure, broke their battel-array. The Marſhal ſeeing it, thought to have fled, but *Valen.* meeting him at this advantage, lent him ſuch a rap with his Spear, as both Horſe and Man fell to the Earth. Being on the Ground, the Souldiers would have killed him, had not *Valentine* charged them to the contrary, & committed him to the cuſtody of four valiant knights.

In this bickering there was many Priſoners of account taken, all which *Valentine* ſent into *Angory*, to be kept in ſafety. By this time, *Brandiffer* and *Lucar* knew that they had the worſt, but they could not make reſiſtance. At laſt they reſolved to return again into their own Countrys, and renew their Forces afreſh, ſo wraping up their Enſigns, they took their way towards the Sea-coaſt, and the Chriſtians followed after, killing all that withſtood them; Of all the Pagans multitudes that went into the field eſcaped but 100 Pagans: They being gone, the Chriſtians rifling their tents, found ineſtimable treaſure, and having ſo done, they returned to *Angory*, to reſt their tyred Limbs. After the Chriſtians had won the Battel, & given burial to the Dead, *Valentine* commanded the priſoners to be brought before him. Among the reſt was the Martial of *Indie*, of whom he demanded if he would forſake his *Mahometry*, the Marſhal anſwered he would ſooner forſake his Life than Religion: then D. *Myllon* demanded of what Country he was, he ſaid, I am a Marſhal of *Indie*, and one whom the k. loveth. Qd. D. *Myllon* to *Valentine*, we are made happy in this Priſoner, for in exchange of him we ſhall releaſe K. *Pepin*, who was led away by the *Indian* King, to be his Dwarf, when we were taken priſoners at *Jeruſalem*: then they demanded of him if the K. had not in his poſſeſſion a Chriſtian of low Stature: Yes, qd. he, there remaineth ſuch a one in his Court, but not as his priſoner, and thither was he brought when the 12 Peers of *France* were taken in *Jeruſalem*. Marſhal, qd. *Valentine*, it is he after whom we enquire, wherefore let him be brought hither, and delivered to us, & you ſhall be ſet at liberty; for he is a Page whom I ever loved, attended on my perſon. At theſe words the Marſhal rejoyced, and ſent Letters to the *Indian* King; who receiving them, was willing to Change, for he knew not that it was K. *Pepin*, and calling him before him, he ſaid, Friend, we give you free liberty to depart my Country, for my Marſhal being taken among the Chriſtians, ſhall be ſurrendred in your ſtead: K. *Pepin* thanked him, & taking his leave of the K. he ran unto the Lady *Clerimond*, and ſaid, Lady, take good heart, for I am ſet at liberty, and I will ſend *Valentine* unto you, who will ſoon work your releaſe. The Lady hearing this, was very joyful,

and *Pepin* departed with the Messengers towards *Angory*. After some few days they arrived there, where the French-men spared for no cost, to shew their love to *K. Pepin*, *At last* Valentine *said*: Uncle, we had good hap in taking the Marshal, & by that means procured your liberty. Nephew (said *K. Pepin*) you above all men have most cause to rejoyce, for I bring you the happiest news that ever you heard: Fair *Clerimond*, whom you so long have lost, is now found, & by me sendeth you hearty commendations: then he related her misfortunes, and how she had demeaned herself, to shun the love of the *Indian K. Valentine* hearing this joyful tydings, he uttered these words: Dear Lady, thou hast bought love at too dear a rate, & curfed I if I prove false; and for trial hereof, I will either purchase thy freedom, or lose my life. This speech being ended, the Marshal was delivered. Then *Valentine* betook him to his chamber to try the tables that he took out of *Pacolet*'s bosom, when he was slain, and found every thing set down, to fall out just as it was now come to pass, and taking Pen, Ink, and Paper, he wrote down what there he found, and sowing it unto his doublet, for fear of losing; it stood him in great stead after, for the safe-guard of his life, as will hereafter appear. *King Pipin* being resident in *Angory*, news was brought him from his Wife *Bertha*, that all *France* was doubtful of his life, and of the twelve Peers of *France*, because they heard they were taken prisoners by the Pagans at *Jerusalem*. This report running for current throughout *France*, hath caused *Arthur* K. of *Britain*, with a puissant Host to enter the kingdom, & to win the Crown of *France* by violence. Also the said *Arthur* hath committed to exile your young son *Charles*: When *King Pepin* heard these tydings, he grew wonderfully desperate, & presently called together all his Barons, & sat in counsel what was requisite to be done in such a plot: At last it was resolved, that king *Pepin* in person should depart into his own Land, to suppress the Usurper; but *Valentine* began to speak to the king, saying, Fair Uncle, it were most requisite that I tarry here to gather new Forces, to rescue my Father, & the 12 Peers of *France*: Do so (qd. *Pepin*) & if it so fall out, that I overcome, I will furnish you with fresh supplies against the Pagans, that you may with more ease compass what you intend to do.

Chap. XL. *How* Valentine, *under the shape of a physician, went into* Indie, *to see and speak with the fair* Clerimond: *how* Valentine *rode away with her: How the K. of* Britain *was given to K.* Pepin *by treason: how* Valentine *took the strong Castle, and delivered his Father the Emperor, & all the rest of the prisoners: how the Emperor,* Orson, *and the* Green Kt. *kept a strong Garrison in the Castle: How* Haufray *and* Henry *compassed the death of their Father: how the Emperor of* Greece, Orson, *and the* Green Kt. *left the Castle, and came to the succour of* Valentine *in* Angory: *how the Christians issued out of the City of* Angory, *and bid battel to the Saracens: how*

Valentine *ignorantly ſlew his Father: and how Myllon* Daugler *returned into* France, *and* Valentine *and* Orſon *into* Greece.

YOU have heard already, that *K. Pepin* brought news unto *Valentine* of the Lady *Clerimond*, which having heard, it would not out of his mind; at laſt he reſolved to paſs from *Angory* to *Indie*, accompanied with one Eſquire, & in the ſhape of a phyſician, he went to Sea with the *Indian* Merchants: being arrived, he lay in the City at an Inn holders houſe, till his Gown and other habiliments were in readineſs: At the firſt entrance in this Inn, the Hoſt asked him what he was? he ſaid a phyſician, & can cure any manner of diſeaſe; The Hoſt believed him, & his Eſq; ſerved him as his Apothecary or Clerk: In this manner, lying there about four days, he called his Hoſt to him, and deſired him to get a man to go about the City, to make known his Art, and ſee who needed help, that I may Cure them; for I would fain get ſomething to defray my charge, while I lye in your houſe; but in the mean ſpace, rather than you ſhall miſtruſt me, I will leave you a good pawn: Marry (qd. the Hoſt) with all my heart, I accept of your gage: So *Valentine* delivered him a rich mantle, furred quite thro' with coſtly Furs, and bad him bring before him that party that ſhould make known his Art: The Hoſt went out, and brought him a ragged fellow: *Valentine* yet was glad of ſuch a fellow as this, and new cloathed him from head to foot, & ſaid unto him; My friend, go thy ways into the City, and cry about the ſame, that there is come a Phyſician, that can heal all diſeaſes, even mad men or women, he will undertake to Cure.

This fellow did as he was commanded, and paſſed from place to place, to publiſh this Doctor's skill: At laſt theſe tydings came to the king, becauſe he had given out, that he could recover mad folks to their former ſenſes: So the king bearing good will to the Lady *Clerimond*, ſent for his phyſician; who had before him many cripples, blind, lame, and crooked; but he left them all, and came unto the king; for there lay the mark at which he aimed: Being come before the king, he did his obeyſance in the Name of the great God *Jupiter*: and the king ſaid unto him: Sir, you be welcome to my court, firſt dine, and then I ſhall tell you further the cauſe of my ſending for you: The king being ſet and ſerved, made *Valentine* alſo to be richly attended, and Dinner being done, ſaid unto him; Sir, I have a beauteous Lady in this palace, whom I would make my Queen, for I love her dearly, but ſhe would not conſent, till the term of one year was expired, I granted her to forbear that year, as ſhe demanded; but at the end ſhe was poſſeſſed with a Lunacy, inſomuch that none durſt come within her reach; ſometimes ſhe whiſtles, anon ſhe cryeth out in a pittiful manner, another while ſhe laugheth, & then ſhe falleth into a flood of tears; ſo that my heart

is over-charged with sorrow for her: Now if your Skill extend it self to Cure her, I will give you more wealth than you can ask, for my Wife *Rozamond* being dead, I would make her Queen of *Indie*: My Lord (quoth *Valentine*) fear not but she shall do well; but she is the harder to be cured, in that it hath siezed her so long: Again, I must be with her all night, to mark the manner of her fits: You shall (quoth the King) have one appointed to bring you thither, but look to your self lest she harm you.

Then one who waited on the Lady, guided *Valentine* to her Window: Now go thy way, and leave me alone. When *Valentine* beheld her in this desperate case, he said; Alas! my love, you have bought me dear, as I have you; but by the gods, I swear, I shall never return again to *France* till I have you along with me, or here lose my life: The Lady beheld him fearfully, and whatsoever came first to hand she threw at him, which much amazed him: then said *Valentine*, is this true madness, or but feigned: Dear Love (quoth he) tell me true, I am *Valentine* your love, for whom I have suffered great damage: think on the Brazen-head that you gave me, or of my brother *Orson*, that had the string cut in his mouth, or how you were stolen away by the Enchanter *Adrimain*. When the Lady heard this, she fell into a swound for joy; and being again recovered, she said: Alas! my love, how many dangers we have passed thro'; you for me and I for you? And now behold in what baseness I have carried my self for thee. Lady, Love dearly bought is the sweetest: By this time the trumpets sounded to bring in the King's meat for Supper; so that he said unty the Lady; My love, I will go into the palace, but after Supper I will come again; for the king knoweth not but that I am a physician, and hath sent for me to heal you: The lady bid him go; as soon as the king saw him, he demanded of him if he could heal the Lady? Yes (quoth *Valentine*) to morrow you shall hear her speak as discreetly as ever she did. The king was so joyful thereat, that he gave unto him a Rich Mantle, all beset with precious stones, and caused him to sit down at his own Table. After Supper, *Valentine* said unto the king, it is necessary I have a fire all this night in the chamber where my patient is; for she will be extream sick all this night. Well, qd. the king, let all things be done, spare for no cost. Now *Valentine* takes his way to the chamber of fair *Clerimond*, with one that carried wood to make a fire withal; which being done, he willed every one to depart, save only his Esq; then *Valentine* shut all the doors and windows, and said unto *Clerimond*; Sweet Lady, now may we embrace at our pleasure, and casting his Eye aside, he espyed the horse of wood, and asked her whose it was, she answered, *Pacolet's*: Then said *Valentine*, let us hence immediately, whereunto she consented.

Valen-

Valentine being somewhat acquainted with *Pacolet*'s horse, mounted him with *Clerimond* & his Esq; in a Moon-shine night, & with great expedition hasted into the City of *Angory*; being come thither, *Valentine* caused the Gates thereof to be opened; and there was great joy for the Lady *Clerimond*. The next morning *Valentine* caused her to be clad in rich habiliments, and married her: by this time the *K.* knew of her Escape, and grew frenzy, & said, Ha! thou false Enchanter, hast thou deceived me? if thou fall once

again into my hands, I will quickly bereave thee of life: And so he caused persuit to be made after *Valentine*, but all in vain, for they found him not. Here leave we them. Now I proceed to tell you of *K. Pepin*, how he hasted into *France*, to the succour of *Bertha* his Wife, & to chastise the Usurper. The *K. of Britain* not thinking what would happen, strengthened himself with all the Forces he could, and sent out Proclamation, that all that could bear Arms should assist him into *France*. Hereupon Queen *Bertha*, with her young Son *Charles*, fled to *Lyons* to seek succour: at the same time lived a worthy and trusty Earl of *Anjou*, who favouring the Queen, and pittying her distress, fortified his Castle against the *Britains*, to whom the Queen sent 4000 horse to keep the passage. At last the *K. of Britain* bid the Earl give him passage into *France*, but answered, No: Here-

Hereupon there was appointed a band of Souldiers, to lay siege at *Angiers*, but the Earl kept close within the City, and would not issue out thereof. During the siege, *K. Pepin* came to *Paris*, & there was joyfully Received: When the Queen understood he was at *Paris*, she hasted unto him, & when she came before him, in tears, she said: Dear Lord, Revenge us on this Usurper, Lady (qd. the *K.*) fear it not So calling about him his Counsellors and Men of War, he made hast to furnish up his Companies, and many were there that Voluntarily offered themselves to do the *K.* any Service. By this time the K. of *Britain* heard that K *Pepin* was coming against him with a great Army, which feared him, & not without cause, for his Friends betrayed him unto k. *Pepin*, to save their own Estates, and make their peace the better with the king. So resolving hereupon on a night they came to him lying on his bed, and led him perforce before k. *Pepin*, who presently caused his Head to be smitten off, within the City of *Paris*: Now they thought that betrayed him; all was well, but the *K.* afterwards seized all their lands into his hands.

Now was *Valentine* much troubled in mind, how he should free the Emperor his Father from Imprisonment, for he knew well that Castle was not to be won by War, or Policy, or by any thing but by Treason: at last he resolved on a subtile plot, and put to Sea 12 Ships, manned with 2000 men, laden with all manner of Riches, as precious Stones, and Silks; and thus as Merchants arrived they at this strong Castle.

Valentine took upon him the shape of a Merchant, setting a rich Crown on his head, and said unto his men: Be you all privately Armed within the Ships, so that none of you be seen, if the Sarazens come aboard, put them to death. Then coming toward the Castle-gate, with the Crown on his head, the Porter said, what bring you hither: Friend, *said* Valentine, I am a Merchant, going into *Spain*, and having many rich Commodities, I hear-say, that I might not pass without a tribute, on pain of Death; said the Porter, I'll go to my Lady, and bring you an answer, so he went to *Galazy*, and told his message: The Lady understanding there was such precious Jewels aboard, she said unto her Seneshal: Go and receive the tribute due to me of the Merchant, and take along with you a sufficient Company of Souldiers, lest they should offer you injury. He did as he was commanded, and coming to the Ships, they found inestimable Gems; insomuch that they were Ravisht therewith: So they taking the Value of the tribute due to the Lady, suddenly the Christians that lay hid in the Ship set upon them, and slew them. *Then* Valentine *said unto them*, except we go forward in this Enterprize, we shall never gain the Castle: Wherefore he caused 50 of his Men to put on the Sarazens Gowns over their Armours, and

and so lading themselves with Silk & precious Stones, took their way to the Castle. The Porter tyed up the Lyons, let down the Draw-bridge, & thirsting after some reward, went beyound his bounds, insomuch as *Valentine* led him to the Ships: Being come, *Valentine* shewed him their dead bodys, and said: I will make you like one of these if you give me not passage into this Castle: Sir (qd. the porter) I shall do it: Why then (qd. Valentine) I will reward thee: Come, said the porter, and bring all these Men whom you have Clad in the Habit of the Sarazens, for they cannot be known from them in the Castle, and let them enter one by one, which they did: So being entred, the porter shewed them a secret Postern, which *Valentine* having gotten, caused all the Doors to be set open, then winded he his Horn, at which all those in the Ship, hasted unto them. Then he entred the Chamber of the Lady *Galazy*, who was astonished thereat; but he said: Lady, fear not, for I have ventur'd the Seas to have a sight of your Royal presence. Then she bad him welcome, and highly feasted him. *Valentine's* Men having entred the Castle, with their shouts so affrighted the Lady, that in weeping manner she said unto him: Courteous Kt. save my Virginity. Lady, qd. he, fear not, for there is none that dares to attempt any dishonour towards your person. By this time all the Pagans within the Castle were slain, & *Valentine* hasting unto the Dungeon, did break it open, & cryed out aloud: All you that be alive come forth. *Orson* knowing his voice, replyed: Brother you are welcome, how came you hither? *Valentine* said, I am come to set you at Liberty. At these words the Emp. fell into a swound, but *Orson* suddenly recovered him. Then they came out of the Dungeon in Ragged Cloaths, and ill coloured Faces; but the Christians revelled for the space of [illegible] days in the Castle; & *Orson* falling in Love with *Galazy*, after the Death of *Fexon*, Married her, by whom he had a Son, named *Orfayr*, who after had the Empire of *Constantinople*.

These affairs being thus brought to an End, & Council was called, what was best to be done. At last they resolved to leave a Garrison to resist the Enemy: Some said it was fitting that *Haufray* & *Henry* should undertake this task. But *Haufray* replyed, Not we, for we are determin'd to go into *France*, to serve our Father. Quoth *Orson*, if you be so resolved, we have small reason to weep for your departure, for there is nothing but treason in you. At these words *Haufray* and *Henry* were displeased, but they durst not shew it. At last it was Resolved that the Emperor should take his Rest; and his Son *Orson*, & the *Green Kt.* should Remain there, to defend the Castle, whilst *Valentine* and the Rest addressed themselves for *Angory*. Now will we look into the Treason of *Haufray* & *Henry*, who being come into *France*, laid a Plot to take away the Life of their Father, and little

Charles

Charles his Son, with *Bertha* the Queen. Being come to *Paris*, the King Royally feasted them, and after demanded what News of the Emperor, *Valentine*, *Orson*, and the Rest? Quoth the Traytors, they were all slain in a Battel at *Angory*, at which the King waxed wonderful sad. After this, they poysoned the King and Queen. Now little *Charles* was still living, who, as the gods would have it, hapned under the safe keeping of *Myllon Daugler*.

The King and Queen being both treacherously poysoned, the two Traytors seemed to be exceeding sorrowful, but D. *Myllon* being a man of a valiant & couragious Spirit, forth-with caused a Counsel to be holden, wherein he would have Crowned young *Charles* K. of *France*, but *Haufray* and *Henry*, by Bribes so Corrupted the Lords, that *Charles* was held too young. Hereupon D. *Myllon* was committed to prison for standing on the Childs part, and *Charles* held as a kitching boy.

A little after it hapned, that *Haufray* commanded *Charles* to turn a spit, but the Boy being full of Majesty, took up the Spit, and fell'd him to the Earth. At this, out steps *Henry*, thinking to smite the Child, but he being ready to Receive him, gave him such a box on the Ear, that blood issued out at his Mouth. Then *Haufray* commanded his men to lay hold on him, but there came a Kt. which took *Charles* by the hand, & conveyed him to *Paris*. The traytors perceiving *Charles* was gone, made out after him, but he could not be found. D. *Myllon* told his Wife thereof, who was sister to *Charles*, the Lady could not behold the same for tears, but vowed that they should dearly pay for these treasons, and forthwith caused Letters to be sent into *Angory* unto *Valentine*, & the 12 Peers of *France*. These Letters came first into the hands of *Valentine*, who could not chuse but weep at this Act of Villany. The Lords perceiving his tears, asked the cause: He answered, K. *Pepin* & the Queen are Dead, and as for *Charles*, the two accursed brothers, *Haufray* and *Henry*, have chased him out of his Country, imprison'd D. *Myllon*, and all that held on young *Charles*'s side: These are the Contents of the Letters, & the Lady that sendeth them, Requireth help to apprehend these Rebels. These sad tydings put them to their wits end, & lying between two extreams knew not which way to take, for *Brandiffer* was daily expected with an Army of many thousands; At last *Valentine* said, E'er to morrow night I will set free D. *Myllon*, or else my skill shall deceive me. At which they all laughed heartily. *Valentine* departed, & with *Pacolet*'s Horse he suddenly arrived at *Paris*, where by his Art he opened the Gates, & Released all the Prisoners, and being shewed the Chamber where D. *Myllon* was, he entred the same, who being fast asleep, he awaked him, & said, Sir, I am *Valentine*, which am come to set you free. The

he mounted him on his Horse, and bad him not speak, for he was to pass through the Air. The D. prayed him to pass by the Castle of *Angier*, that he might but see his Wife, which he did, & being come to the Lady, who presently Ran and kissed him, demanding of him whither he went? Lady, qd. he, I go to fight against the Infidels, to bring home the 12 Peers of *France*, with an Army, to overthrow *Haufray* and *Henry*, and to succour *Charles*. Having Refresh'd themselves with Meat, they set forth towards *Hungary*: Being come, they came before all the Barons, who were much astonied at *Valentine*'s Art, greatly desiring to learn it, but he would teach it no Man: Now was *Brandiffer* with his Host, come within a mile of *Angory*, & there planted his siege. The Citizens hearing hereof, shut up their Gates, drew up their Bridges, and after got on the Walls, lying a month together without making Resistance. The Emp. hearing that *Bran.* had begirt *Angory* with so huge an Army, Resolv'd to leave the strong Castle to the Guard of a Kt. So the Emperor, *Orson*, & the Green Kt. took Shipping, accompanied with 1000 Souldiers: Being at Sea, they saw a great Fleet of Ships coming to them, and at last they found it to be a Pagan with 10000 men, going to the succour of *Brandiffer*: The Christians longing to fight with the Pagans, fell upon them, so that their chanced a bloody battel: Great valour was shown on both sides, but they knew not whether the victory would incline. At last the Pagan Admiral encountring a Christian Kt. tumbled him over Shipboard: *Orson* standing by him grew angry; and taking his Axe, struck him stark Dead: This deed discouraged the Pagans, that they with-drew themselves all that night, they having lost 15 large Ships, and 400 Men. Then the Emperor said: Lords, let us Arm our selves with such Weapons as here we have seized from the Pagans, which they presently did, but this Enterprize was fatal, for the Emp. was slain by his own Son *Valentine*, who took him for an Infidel, as hereafter you shall hear. But here they hoise sail again, & at last arrived in *Angory*.

After a months siege, *Valentine* sent a Defiance to *Brandiffer*, offering him Battel: The Christians divided their Battel in 10 Squadrons, whereof D. *Myllon* was their General. *The* 2. *Sampson* of *Orleance*. *The* 3. Earl of *Vandsom*. *The* 4. Earl of *Campayne*. *The* 5. *Quintine* of *Norm*. *The* 6. the D. of *Burgoyn*. *The* 7. the Earl of *Dampmartin*. *The* 8. the Earl of *Asserve*. *The* 9. the Marshal of *Constantinople*. *The* 10. *Valentine*, who added courage to all the Rest. Being in order, they issued out of the City, to assail *Brandiffer*, who hath divided his Army into 12 Squadrons, and the Squadron which had the least commander, was a K. At the joyning of these Battels, a certain Pagan, that never had

been in wars, couched his Spear in his rest, & would be the foremast man, but *Valentine* to cool his pride, ran against him, & struck him down dead: then they fell to it pell mell, wherein the Christians behaved themselves valiantly, and the *Indian* King entring the Battel, made very much slaughter: but *Valentine* missing him, gave him such a counter-buff, that he set him besides his Horse.

At this present the Christians got the better, & caused the Infidels to give ground, but there came in a Sarazens Captain with 3000 men, & continued the battel hotter than before. By this time K. *Lucar* lighted on the *Indian* K. and lent him succour: now the Christians began to retire, so that they had been forced to a shameful flight, had not two valiant *Kts.* named *Reynard* of *Province*, and *Myllon* of *Dyon*, arrived in *Angory*, with 700 men at Arms (the which lately had come from the holy Sepulchre, & suffered much misery) entred the field: one of them brought into *France* the daughter of a rich Admiral, called *Claridine*, and caused her to be baptized. At their approach the Pagans were much discomfited, for *Myllon* of *Dyon* at his first encounter, smote *K. Lucar* stark dead, & at the next another *K.* called *Rubres*, which much amazed *Brandiffer*. At another part of the battel rushed in *Reynard*, and slew many of them. *Valentine* wondred at these two *Kts* of Chivalry, & coming toward them, said, Lords, you are welcome, I pray what are you, or by what chance came you hither; friend (quoth *Reynard*) we are Lords of *France*, & lately come from the holy Sepulchre, who hearing of these Wars, we thought it requisite to defend you against the Pagans. Quoth *Valentine*, once again heartily welcome; for *Myllon Dangler* is here, and all the peers of *France*: So they joyntly rushed afresh into the battel. All this while the *Indian K.* had a spleen at *Valentine*, for his last disgrace, & finding him out, accompanied with three other kings, they so encounter'd *Valentine*, that they did smite him and his horse to the ground: being down, he quickly recovered; & drawing his sword, defended himself there-with: but with much danger. At last Duke *Myllon*, *Sampson*, & *Gervis*, came unto his succour, getting a fresh horse for him: *Val.* being mounted, made his course against the *Indian* King again, and striking him down, took away his shield, which he kept (for he had lost his own.) This ended, tydings came, that a great fleet of Sarazens was coming near unto the Haven: Hereupon *Valentine* said, Lords, let us presently go strengthen the passages. So *Valentine*, & D. *Myllon* of *Dyon*, went to the Haven; but these were all friends and Christians, amongst whom was his father, the Emperor of *Greece*, of whom you shall hear more.

The Emperor having landed his men, *Val.* saluted him with his spear in his rest; the Emperor (who bare the shield of a Sarazen unknown) encoun-

countred with his Son: At last *Valen.* ran his spear quite through his Father's body, that he fell down dead. His father being dead he lay, *Montjoy vive Gregeois*, *Orson* seeing his father dead, did weep and said, Brother, there is small content in this; for you have slain your Father: When he heard him say so, he fell in an Extasie from his horse: To this lamentation of the two Brothers came *Roy.* of *Prov.* and *Myl.* of *Dyon*, to comfort them, saying, Knights, have patience, for tears cannot recal him, Alas! said *Valen.* what have I done? it where happy for me! if death would take me from this world, I have committed a fact, detestable both to God & men: O! what will become of me! my life have I passed away in troubles, torments and cares, & now to add more sorrow to my days, I have shed the blood of my dear Father. Brother *Orson* take my sword, & cut off my head, that the Earth may not bear so bloody a Butcher. Brother said *Orson*, depart not thus, but repent, and no doubt but you shall be forgiven: So comforting him in this manner, at last they got him to his horse, whereon being mounted, he ran through the *Pagan* troops so furiously, that all they that stood in his way perished. Now began the Battel to encrease, & king *Christo* slew the Christians on every side. At last *Valentine* meeting him, gave him such a canvasada, that he pierced his body quite through. In this battel D. *Myllon* of *Dyon*, and *Reynard* of *Provence*, rushed so fierce into the Battel of the Enemy that they were taken prisoners: yet notwithstanding their adverse fortunes, they got their liberties once again, & made *Charles* K. of *France*, with honour and joy, to the destruction of *Haufray* & *Henry*, the two notable Traitors: yet was not this fierce, long, and tedious battel ended, for they stood it out manfully on either side. *Valen.* being careless of life, at last met with *Brandiff* who encountred each other so fiercely, that both fell to the earth: but *Valentine* suddenly recovering himself, took the K. such a blow, that he clave his head. K. *Baumant* seeing his brother slain, went out of the field with the Admiral of *Cordes*, & K. *Joseph*, who caused a retreat to be sounded: the Christians following, slew many thousands, & others leapt into the Sea, and drowned themselves. So the night drawing on, the Christians returned into the City: next morning, in burying the dead, there was great lamentation for the Emperor of *Greece*. Then his body was royally interred in the City of *Angory*, but *Valentine* could not be comforted. The Pagans being thus twice put to the worst before *Angory*, Duke *Myllon* took his leave of *Valentine*, to return into *France*, saying, *Valentine*, I would I could return as swiftly back, as you brought me hither, Friend (*quoth Valentine*) I would I had never known the Art; for it hath brought nothing but shame, & vexation on me, & him an untimely death that taught it me; So that D. *Myllon* departed. *Valen-*

tine & *Orson* intended to go for *Greece*; but before their departure, they crowned the Green knight, King of *Angery*. After leave taken, *Orson* called the fair *Galazy* to him, and said, Love, I know you are with child by me, yet I cannot Wed you, for that I have another Wife; but before I go, I will make certain Lands over to you, for your maintenance that you may hereafter live of your self. All these offers she denied, but said, she would go to Sea with him, and after confine me to some Religious House, wherein I may spend the residue of my days. Agreed (qd. *Orson*) and so he took her with him to *Constantinople*. Being come thither, they send word to the Empress of their Father's death, but concealed by whom it was done: The Lady was sorrowful for her Husband, but joyed at the sight of her Children, so did all the City, making great triumphs for their return. The Empress being at Dinner, said unto her Sons; it must be agreed betwixt you who shall be Emperor. *Orson* replyed, it appertaineth not to me to take the first place: Brother, let it be as I say, for I am beholden to you, you nothing to me: therefore take the Empire, and sway the Scepter.

At last it was agreed on, that they should joyntly Govern, but *Valentine* continued not long in that state of Dignity, for shortly after on a morning, he called to him *Clerimond*, and said thus unto her: Understand me, you know that I have slain my Father, and my conscience remaineth still troubled for that fact, and I am minded to go on Pilgrimage: Commend me to my Mother, and to my Brother *Orson*, both which I charge you not to see, till fifteen days be passed over, and then give them this Letter; all which the Lady must consent to, although in tears.

Chap. XLI. *How* Valentine *took leave of* Clerimond *before his Pilgrimage, How King* Hugon *demanded* Clerimond *for his Wife, how he betrayed* Orson, *and the* Green-Knight: *How* Galeran *delivered Letters to the Ladies, and of the grievous lamentations they made: How* Bellisant *and* Clerimond *came to know of King* Hugon's *Treason: How* Galeran *lost his Head, and how* Orson, *and the* Green Knight *were set free.*

THen *Valentine* said Lady, cease your tears, and give me your Wedding Ring: she having done so, he break it in two pieces, keeping the one half, and giving her the other: saying, my Love, keep thy half, and whatsoever you hear, believe nothing, till you see this other half, which I possess: At these words he embraced her, and wept bitterly, so departed, only one Page with him: Having long travelled, at last he came to *Rome*, there coming into the presence of a Hermet, he confessed the death of his Father; the Hermit seeing him so penitent, enjoyned him Penance: first change thy habit, and go barely cloathed, and 7 years lye under the stairs of thy palace, without speaking any words: thou shalt neither eat or drink, but

but of the scraps that come from mine own table; do this, and fear not thy sins: Sir, said *Valentine*, all this I will do: So after he had dined, he departed, without speaking to his servant; after this he entred into a Wood, feeding upon Roots; and he continued there so long, that he was forgotten amongst men. *Orson* having now read the Letter that *Clermond* delivered him, wept bitterly, insomuch as the Lady said unto him: Brother, cease your lament: Alas! said *Orson*, I have great cause, for this letter sheweth, that my Brother will never return: Hereat the Lady

swounded, and recovering her self, she said, why hath my love hid his intent from me? but all her sorrow could not call him home again: News was spread through the City, that *Valentine* would never return: *Clermond* wailed, *Beatrix* complained, and *Orson* sighed: Now the Lady *Fezon* hearing *Orson* had got another Lady with Child, she died with grief. Being dead, *Orson* made a years solemnity of her Funeral, and after married *Oliva*, of whom you have heard before.

Now I will shew you how *Valentine* came back to *Constantinople* in beggarly Weeds, insomuch that he was not known, going from house to house a begging. At last he went into his Brother's palace, about supper

time, and those that waited at the tame bear him away: *Orf.* seeing them so churlish, bad them let him alone, for I am willing all poor men should be Relieved, for my brother *Valen.* his sake, that so we may hear tydings of him; After this, they brought him meat & wine; but he espying a basket, wherein the scraps were put, eat thereof, which amazed the beholders: Night being come, the servitors asked *Orf.* if he would let that counterfeit abide in his Palace: Ay (qd. *Orf.*) for it may be for some vow which he hath made: thus abode *Val.* & made his bed of straw under the stairs. On the morrow *Orf.* passing by, gave him mony, after came his Mother, and his wife *Clarin*, and they gave him money, saying, How can you endure this bakedness? this night you shall have Clothes provided for you: they being gone, he gave his mony to two poor men standing by him, who scoffed at him for his alms: next day at dinner, there was great variety of meats, which he refused, & made lyons for the Alms basket. *Orf.* to try him further, caused some of the best meat to be put therein, but he would not touch it: then said *Orf.* surely this is some vow he hath made to the gods: thus did *Valen.* remain with the poor without being known, that they thought him dumb: in those days there was a K. of *Hungaria*, named *Hugen*, who heard that *Valen.* had given over the Empire of *Greece* to his brother *Orf.* this *Hugen* came to *Constantl.* & was honourably received: after his arrival, he came to the Lady *Clarin* & said, I am King of *Hungaria* & have no wife, & for that purpose I am come hither to crave your love: I know that *Valentine* is dead, & if he be not, yet I think he will never return: Dear Lady grant me thy love, & thou shalt be Q. of *Hungaria*: (qd. the lady) I thank you for your kindly proffer, but to be your wife I cannot; for sure my husband liveth, & for 7 years I have every day expected his return; besides, when I make choice of a Husband, my brother *Orf.* & all the Peers of the Land must know; for without their leave I may never marry. Then he went towards *Orf.* & demanded of him if he heard any news from his brother, Great K. (qd. *Orf.*) no, but he left me a Letter, & certified me, that he is gone to exile, & beareth about him the half Ring he was married withal; the other half he left with his wife, charging her, that she believe nothing of him, till she see the other half which he possessed. The gods be his good speed, qd. *Hugen*, for he was a worthy K. But one thing qd. *Hugen*, have I more to acquaint you with; I am determined to take a journey to *Jerusalem*, to visit the holy shrine, so you would bear me company. With all my heart, qd. *Orf.* but let us go to *Angory*, & take with us the Green K. who is King thereof: it shall be so qd. *Hugen*: so *Orf.* taking leave of his Mother, & his wife *Galazy*, came to *Angory*, & was received with great joy. Having feasted there, they took their way to *Jerusalem*: Being come into the

City

City, while they were beholding divers Monuments, *Hugon* stole away from them to the K. of *Jury*, and said; I have a message to deliver worth your attention. There is newly arrived here 2 worthy Kts. that are your greatest Enemies, for they slew K. *Brandiffer*, K. *Lavar*, & your brother K. of *Indie*: When *Kaherre* heard all that he could say, he was sorry for the death of his brother, & said to *Hugon*, Can you deliver me these two Kts? Yea, said the Traytor, so you will give me their gold Seals? Sir, qd. he, them & much more will I give you; Then hearken, send to the Patriarch's house, & he will tell you where they are: The king sent out 800 armed men, and found them at dinner, then they took them and brought them to the king: False Enemies, qd. the K. to our lives & religion, my heart even leapeth for joy that I have got you, tell me what is your names? my name is *Orson*, and this is the Green kt. You are the men I look for, and there is another called *Valintine*, had I him also, I would use you all alike, then he caused their seals to be taken away, and given to *Hugen*, and they to be caft in a dungeon, & be fed only with bread and water: Now all this while they knew not what was become of *Hugen*; for they thought he were slain by the Sarazens, while he was plotting with another traitor in the City, called *Galeran*, and began thus to salute him; *Galeran*, my desire is to imploy you secretly in a matter of import, and I will reward the sufficiently; Uncle (qd. Gal.) fear me not, I know your drift, you would obtain fair *Clerimond*: True said *Hugen*, therefore let us write a Letter in the name of *Orson*, and we will seal it with his seal, and the Letter shall be thus framed.

'*Orson*, by the power of the gods, Emperor of *Greece*, unto the thrice 'Renowned Soveraign Lady my Mother, unto you my Love *Galazy*, and 'my Sister *Clerimond*, greeting. Know this, that many things and 'fallen out contrary to our expectation, which are here set down, Requiring nothing but patience: Ladies, know that I found my Brother *Valentine* on his Death-bed at *Jerusalem*, and a little before his last Gasp 'he charged me to salute *Clerimond*, in his Name, and command her, 'that if ever she marry again, she take some Prince to her Husband; the 'cause why he sent not the half Ring, was for that it was stolen from him 'in his sickness.

This Letter thus finished, *Hugen* wrote another Letter, saying:

'Right well-beloved Sister, we have said enough about my Brother *Valentine*, but now we wish you, for the great beauty wherewith you are adorned, first to accomplish the desire of the Dead; secondly, to encrease your Honour, we advise you to match with *Hugen* King of *Hungary*, so you will avoid our displeasure. And for further Authority, we have sealed 'these Letters with our own Seals. Again know, that we cannot yet Re-

turn, for great Wars is fallen between the Infidels and Christians. So we leave you to the tuition of the gods.

These Letters being sealed, *Hugon* gave them to *Galeran* to bear to *Constantinople*, himself following after: By this means thinking to get the Lady. *Galeran* being in *Constantinople* delivered his Letter to the Lady *Bellisant*, who commanded that he should be highly feasted. Afterward she called one to Read them, & *Valentine* lying in the Hall heard the contents thereof: Being Read, the Ladys grew exceeding sorrowful for the Death of *Valentine*, but especially the Lady *Clerimond*, pittiously lamenting his misfortunes, saying: How unhappy amongst Women am I? Alas *Valentine*, why went I not with thee, to see thy body laid up safe in the Earth? Unkind Brother & the Green-knight, Why are you two such Enemies, as to wish me to marriage so soon after *Valentine*'s Death, seeing I have lost such a noble, magnanimous, and loving Kt. the mirror of Chivalry, the rose of Honour, the example of Courtesie, and the patron of Truth? Death, hast thou not one Dart left to shoot at this poor breast? For seeing my Life is nothing but sorrow, I will never have other Husband, but in sorrow will I spend the rest of my days; All this did *Valentine* behold; which he pitty-ed; but fearing to be known, he buried it in silence? *Bellisant* seeing *Clerimond* thus violent, said: Daughter, be patient, he was my Son, and I sorrow for him at my heart, but when I consider he cannot be fetched back, therewith I pass it over, and rather think on what your Brother, and my Son *Orson* doth advise you unto; Good Mother (qd the Lady) say no more, for I shall never marry, and therewith went weeping to her Chamber, and *Valentine* lay under the stairs, musing how these Treasons should come about. Some four days after, K. *Hugon* came to *Constantinople*, & was received with great honour; but *Clerimond* shewed him no favour: Being there, he said unto the Empress: You understand of the Death of your Son, for whom I am sorry: But it is agreed upon that I shall marry the Lady: Sir, qd. *Clerimond*, I am not willing to marry you, nor any other: All this treason *Valentine* heard; but in the end, the matter was so urged, that *Hugon* had the Lady, which much encreased his joys, but they were short.

Valentine having ended his Orisons to the gods, the Oracle made answer to him thus: *Valentine* get thee out of the City, and without the Gates is a Pilgrim, put on his Weeds, having them on, get thee to thy Palace, & there before all comners reveal the Treason practised against thy Love, for in this disguise thou canst not be known: *Valentine* coming to the Court in this disguise, in the presence of the Ladies, and amongst them was the Traytor *Bolon*, even he that uttered such Reproachful Words against *Valen*. Now *Valentine* came to *Bellisant*, saying: Lady I beseech you shew me the Wife

of *Valentine*, I would fain do a message to her: Wouldst thou? said the Lady I am she that thou desirest to see: Then thus, I have lately seen thy Love *Valen* that sendeth salutations, willing me to say, that within three dahys he will be with you. Pilgrim (qd. the Lady) advise well thy self what thou speakest, for I heard my Love is Dead; Lady (qd. the Pilgrim) believe it not, for I protest to deliver my body to Death, if it be not true what I have said: *Hugon* hearing these words related to the Ladies, secretly mounted his Horse, and never Returned back. The Ladies on the other side, were amazed at the pilgrims tale, and offered to feast him, but he would not, only he said to them: Ladies, pardon me, I pray, for I have certain companions in the Town, which I must needs visit, therefore I request your pardon: Yet *Clerimond* would gratifie him for his News, giving him mony, which he bountifully bestowed again upon the Servants. Presently after it was demanded, what was become of King *Hugon*? A Damosel standing by, said, I saw him just now take horse; but where he is I know not.

Upon these words *Galeran* came in; and they asked him what was become of his Uncle *Hugon*? who making no Reply, *Bellisant* grew inraged, and said, You shall not escape till you have related the Treason *Hugon* hath practised against us. Then *Galeran* said, Lady have mercy on me, & I shall tell you all. Say on, I pardon thee. My Uncle is guilty of treason, and has sold to the Pagans, the Emperor, *Orson*, & the *Green-kt*. Which tale sore daunted the assembly, but *Galeran* was presently hanged. Then *Valentine* leaving the habit of a Pilgrim, returned again to the Palace; *Celrimond* espying him, said poor Man! Where have you been? Methinks you seem displeased, because I said I will not marry? *Valentine* replyed not at all, but left her; yet she not contented at his dejection, caused a costly Quilt to be brought for him to lodge upon, but he refused.

K. *Jury* having *Orson* & the *Green Kt.* in hold, caused them to be brought before him, and said unto them: Lords, you see, you are at my mercy, wherefore I vow you shall never escape with life, except you will resign back unto me the City of *Angory*. *Orson* replyed, we will never consent hereunto, except thou give King *Hugon* unto us; The King said unto them, Speak nothing of him, for he is the Traytor that delivered you into my hands, & he hath your Seals: *Orson* and the Green-knight marvelled much thereat, and swore they would be Revenged on him.

Now it fell out, that these prisoners were content to yield to the King's command, & so returned to *Const*. Being come home, *Clerimond* told him, that she had heard tydings of *Valentine*, which Rejoyced *Orson*, who lying with his Wife that night, got a Son called *Morant*, who after Ruled *Angory*. Not long after *Orson* raised an host of Men to go for *Angory*,

which when *Hugon* heard, he offered him the same City, and four Horse-load of Gold, and if any there durst call him Traytor (*Orson* excepted) he would fight with him: the *Green Knight* accepted his Challenge; so arming themselves, the *Green knight* came first into the List. All things set in order, they Encountred each other with their Speats, next with their Swords; at last the *Gren Kt.* gave *Hugon* such a stroak on his Helm, that he cut part of his head, even off at his Shoulders; so that he fell into a Swound, thus was the *Green Kt.* Conqueror: *Hugon* reviving again, desired a Confessor, and unfolding the Treason, dyed in the Place: *Orson* nevertheless caused his body to be Sumptuously interred: At last *Hugon*'s Treason being blown abroad, they tendered the City to the Emp. *Orson*: This being ended, they returned into *Constantinople*: But *Clarimond* marvelled she heard not of *Valentine*,

Chap. XLII. *How at the end of 7 years, Valentine dyed in the palace of* Constantinople, *& how* Orson *turned Hermet.*

At the end of 7 Years, *Valentine* fell into a mortal Disease, whereof he dyed. Before his Death an Angel appeared to him, saying, *Valentine* thy Glass is Run, for within 4 hours thou shalt dye: Whereat he greatly Rejoyced, making signs for Pen, Ink, and Paper; When he had it, he *Wrote that it* was himself *that* appeared like a Pilgrim, and discovered the Treason; After *putting to it* his Name, he closed up the paper, *putting* in the other half of the Ring *that* he had kept: Shortly after he laid him down and Dyed. When *Orson* saw *that* he was Dead, he was troubled in mind. The poor Man being Dead, held a *Letter* in his Hand, which *Orson* would have taken out, but he could not, then came *Clarimond*, and as soon as she laid hold thereon, the Hand opened it self. *Clarimond* breaking up *the Letter*, and knowing *the* half Ring, said; Lords, we shall hear news of *Valentine*: so a Secretary was called to Read *it*, *at the* Reading hereof, great lamentations was made, *but* especially by *Clarimond*, who falling on the dead body, said: Alas I have lost all my Joy, Comfort, and Hopes, for *that* my love should dye so near my person, and I not know of it; Now great preparations was made for his Funeral Rites; he was interred in great magnificence in *Constantinople*; *Clarimond* afterward betook her to a single life. Thus having shown the death of *Valentine*, and what became of *Clarimond*: Let us return to *Orson*, who ruled the Empire of *Constantinople* seven years, and by his second Wife *Galazy*, he had a Son named *Morant*, who afterwards was king of *Angory*.

After 7 years were expired, *Galazy* dyed, for whom *Orson* was exceeding sorrowful, & in the end, betook him to the Woods, feeding on bread & roots.

It

it hapened one night, that he saw a vision, it seemed to him more glorious than his tongue could utter. After this vision he awaked, and being astonied hereat, with tears he came to the Green kt and said: Sir, I see the uncertainty of the World, for which I am willing to resign my Estate & children unto you: see them well educated, that they may be fit to govern such a people, for *I* will spend the rest of my days in sollitary contemplation: When the Green kt. heard these words, he wept bitterly. But *Orson* recomforted him, saying: Weep not; but pray for me, as I for you, that you may accomplish that which *I* put you in trust withal. So taking his way towards a Wood, he there spent the remainder of his days: the Green kt. after so governed his Children, that they carefully spent their time on Earth, and followed their Father to his Grave. *FINIS.*

THE TABLE.

Chap. I. *HOW King* Pepin *banished his Queen* Bertha; *and how he gave his Sister* Bellisant *in Marriage to* Alexander, *Emperour of* Constantinople.

Chap. II. *How the Arch-priest of* Constantinople *betrayed the Emperor, his Lord and Master, in making love to fair* Bellisant *the Empress; and what evil followed thereupon. The Arch-priest having received a repulse of* Bellisant, *to save his own honour, practised treason against the Innocent Lady.*

Chap. III. *How the Arch-priest put on him the habit of a Knight at Arms, & being well mounted, followed the Empress* Bellisant, *who was lately banished. How* Bellisant, *in her banishment, was Delivered of two fair Sons in the Wood, whose Names were* Valentine *and* Orson, *and how she lost them.*

Chap. IV. *Of the Bear that bore away one of the Children.*

Chap. V. *How, by the Counsel of the Arch-priest, new Customs, & Taxations were raised through the City of* Constantinople; *and how the treason came to light. How the Emperor, by the Counsel of his Nobility, sent for King* Pepin, *to see the Combate fought between the Arch-priest and the Merchant.*

Chap. VI. *How the Merchant, & High-priest encountred at the place appointed, about the clearing the Lady* Bellisant, *and what a glorious victory did betide the Merchant. how King* Pepin, *after the Combat, returned into* France, *and after sailed to* Rome, *to fight the Sarazens that had surprized the City.*

Chap. VII. *How King* Pepin *besieged* Rome; *and how* Valentine *fusted with the Admiral of the Sarazens, and slew him, whereby the City was relieved and won again from the Sarazens.*

Chap. VIII. *How* Haufray *and* Henry *repined at the love the King did shew towards* Valentine.

Chap. IX. *How* Valentine *Conquered his brother* Orſon *(the Wild-man in the Forreſt of* Orleance*) and afterwards departed from the Forreſt, with* Orſon, *towards* Orleance, *wherein King* Pepin *was reſident.*

Chap. X. *How* Haufray *and* Henry *took Counſel together, to Murther* Valentine, *in the Chamber of* Eglantine. *And how Duke* Savary *ſent unto King* Pepin, *for aid againſt the Green Knight, who would have his Daughter in Marriage againſt her Will.*

Chap. XI. *How divers Knights arrived at* Aquitain, *at a ſolemn Juſt there holden to bear away the Love of the beautious Lady* Fezon. *how* Haufray *&* Henry, *accompanied with a Troop of their Confederates, lay in Ambuſh to take away the Life of* Valentine.

Chap. XII. *How* Orſon *and* Grygar *fought together, and how* Orſon *returning victor, cauſed* Grygar *to confeſs the Treaſon, who was after hanged, and* Valentine *delivered from the Dungeon,* &c.

Chap. XIII. *How* Orſon *Encountered the* Green knight, *and what followed thereof; alſo how* Valentine *attempted to fight with him, but could not overcome him.*

Chap. XIV. *How* Valentine *took Advice and ſent* Orſon *on the morrow, to fight the* Green-knight; *and how* Orſon *overcame him.*

Chap. XV. *How* Orſon *having Conquer'd the* Green-knight, Valentine *cauſed him to be Chriſtened, and ſending him to King* Pepin, *&c.*

Chap. XVI. *How King* Pepin *came to know that* Valentine *and* Orſon *were his Nephews; and how the* Green knight *ſubmitted himſelf according to his promiſe.*

Chap. XVII. How *King* Pepin *departed from* France *towards* Greece, *to bear theſe Tydings; how he found* Conſtantinople *beſieged by the Souldan of* Egypt; *how the* Green-knight *Juſted with two Sarazens and overcame them; of the battel that was fought, and the Armies entring the City.*

Chap. XVIII. *How* Valentine *and* Orſon *arrived at the ſtrong Caſtle, wherein fair* Clerimond *was; and how, by the brazen-head, they had knowledge of their Parents.*

Chap. XIX. *How (when as* Valentine *was before the Caſtle, talking with the Guard)* Clerimond *bewailed the Love of* Valentine: *And how he Juſted for the Entrance, and overcame the Seneſhal.*

Chap. XX. *How* Valentine *ſhewed* Clerimond *her brothers Ring, which the* Green-knight *gave him, and how he queſtioned with the Brazen-head, which told him from whence he was deſcended.*

Chap. 21.

Chap. XXI. *How the Gyant* Ferragus *had knowledge of all that past, between his Sister and* Valentine, *by the means of one* Pacolet *a Dwarf and an Enchanter.*

Chap. XXII. *How* Pacolet *hereupon made another expeditious Journey into* Portugal, *to see the Lady* Bellisant, Valentine's *Mother; his return back, and the News that he brought.*

Chap. XXIII. *How* Valentine *and* Orson *were betrayed by the Treachery of* Ferragus; *and how he committed them to prison, with their woeful Lamentation.*

Chap. XXIV. *How* Pacolet *the Dwarf comforted the two Ladies.*

Chap. XXV. *How by Art* Pacolet *set free* Valentine *and* Orson *from the Prison of* Ferragus, *and conducted them, with their Mother and fair* Clerimond.

Chap. XXVI. *How* Valentine *and* Orson *escaped the Castle of* Ferragus, *and sailed with the two Ladies into* Aquitain.

Chap. XXVII. *How King* Ferragus *assembled all his Men of War, to take Revenge upon* Valentine, *and his Sister* Clerimond, *and how he followed them into* Aquitain.

Chap. XXVIII. *How the Duke of* Aquitain *was taken Prisoner in the Battel by* Ferragus, *and how* Orson *set him free by the help of* Pacolet.

Chap. XXIX. *How* Orson *tryed the Constancy of the Lady* Fezon, *before he Married her.*

Chap. XXX. *How* Ferragus *the Gyant strengthened his Forces by the Aid of King* Trompart, *and the Enchanter* Adrimain.

Chap. XXXI. *Of the pitiyful Tale the Empress made to* Valentine *her Son, before his farewel into* Constantinople, *and what Speeches passed between him, his Father, and his Uncle.*

Chap. XXXII. *How* Valentine *and the* Green-knight *were taken Prisoners in the Battel of* Constantinople, *by the Souldan* Moradin *and his Men.*

Chap. XXXIII. *How* Pacolet *by Enchantment, delivered* Valentine *and the* Green-knight *out of the Bondage of the* Souldan; *and how* Pacolet *couzened the* Souldan *when he had him upon his Horse, &c.*

Chap. XXXIV. *How King* Trompart *came before* Aquitain, *to succour* Ferragus, *and brought with him* Adrimain *the Enchanter, who betray'd* Pacolet, *&c.*

Chap. XXXV. *How King* Pepin *took leave of the Emperor at his Departure from* Greece, *& how* Orson *went along with him. How* Garnier *fainting, left the Knife in the Bed, and Accused* Orson *falsely of Treason, and how the knife was found in the King's Bed. And how* Orson *claimed Combat against his Accusers, when they would have adjudged him; and it was* (by the twelve peers of *France*) *granted. And how* Valentine, *in seeking* Clerimond, *arrived at* Antioch, *& fought with a Dragon, and in the end slew the Dragon. And how* Valentine, *after the Conquest of the Dragon, caused the King of* Antioch, *and all his Land to be Baptized, and of the Lawless*

Love of the Queen Rozamond. *And how the King of* Antioch *was put to Death for Renouncing his Mahometry, by King* Brandiffer, *his Wifes Father. And how the Emperor of* Greece, *and the Green Knight were taken prisoners by* Brandiffer.

Chap. XXXVI. *How* Clerimond *after the Year was past, feigned her self mad, because she would not wed the King of* Indie: *And of* Lucar, *that would revenge the death of his Father King* Tyrrel *upon the King of* Indie: *How King* Lucar *in the City of* Esclariana *wedded* Rozamond, *the fair daughter of* Brandiffer: *how* Valentine *departed from* Esclardy, *to breathe the air. Defiance: of the Answer he brought from the* Indian *King; how* Rozamond *found a way to be taken, and led unto the* Indian *King: how king* Lucar *caused* Brandiffer *to stay with him, and sent* Valentine *into* Angory *against* King Pepin, *&c.*

Chap. XXXVII. *How* Valentine *returned back to* indie, *after the battle, and bare with him the dead body of King* Murgalant: *how he heard tydings of his Father: how* pacolet *freed the* Indian *King, and left* Brandiffer *in Prison: how K.* Lucar *caused all that hundred that watched the* indian, *to be drawn to death at horses Tails: &c.*

Chap. XXXVIII. *How* Valentine *and* Pacolet *came before the Castle: how* Pacolet *raised up the Devil to ask his counsel about the taking of the Castle: how* Brandiffer *brought the Twelve Peers of* France *into his strong Castle, & imprisoned them: how he besieged the City of* Angory. *And how* Brandiffer *having knowledge that Lucar was Captive in* Angory, *made means to* Valentine *to deliver him upon sufficient Ransom.*

Chap. XXXIX. *How Myllon* Daugler *(who was taken for the K. of* France) *was delivered out of prison in lieu of K.* Lucar: how Valentine *and the Duke of Myllon issued* out of Angory, *and won the Battel from the* Sarazens: *How K.* pepin *was delevered in change for the King of* Indie; *Marshal, left* Angory, *and returned into* France, *to succour his Wife.*

Chap. XL. *How* Valentine, *under the shape of a Physician, went into* Indie, *to see & speak with the fair* Clerimond: *how* Valentine *rode away with her; how the K. of* Brittain *was given to K.* Pepin *by treason; how* Valentine *took the strong Castle, and delivered his Father the Emperor, & all the rest of the Prisoners; how the Emperor,* Orson, *and the Green Kt. kept a strong Garrison in the Castle; how* Haufray *and* Henry *compassed the death of their Father; how the Emperor of* Greece, Orson, *and the* Green Kt. *left the Castle, and came to the succour of* Valentine *in* Angory; *how the Christians issued out of the City of* Angory, *& bid battle to the Sarazens; how* Valentine *ignorantly slew his Father: and how Myllon* Daugler *returned into* France, *and* Valentine *and* Orson *into* Greece.

Chap. XLI. *How* Valentine *took leave of* Clerimond *before his Pilgrimage. How King* Hugon *demanded* Clerimond *for his Wife, how he betrayed* Orson, *and the* Green-Knight: *How* Galeran *delivered Letters to the Ladies, and of the grievous lamentations they made: How* Bellisant *and* Clerimond *came to know of King* Hugon's *Treason: How* Galeran *lost his Head, and how* Orson, *and the* Green Knight *were set free.*

Chap. XLII. *How at the end of 7 years,* Valentine *dyed in the Palace of* Constantinople, *& how* Orson *turned Hermit,*

FINIS.

ADVERTISEMENT.

THere is brought from *Chili*, a most Excellent natural *Balsam*, 'tis a Remedy no man under the Sun can compose. It cures all pains coming from cold pains in the Stomach: 'tis also good for all bruises or Ulcers of the Lungs, Reins, Bladder or Womb, it helps shortness of Breath, Cough, Consumption, Falling-sickness, Apoplexy, *Palsey*, Trembling, Convulsions, Kills Worms, and Cures Deafness, and most Diseases in Women, *&c.* It is only to be had of *Eben. Tracy*, at the Three Bibles on *London-Bridge*, at 1*s.* 6*d.* per Ounce. The Bottles are sealed with the Balsam Tree.

19 6..

132268